Dell PowerVault TL1000 Tape Autoloader

User's Guide
Note

Information in this document is subject to change without notice.

© 2017-2019 Dell Inc. All rights reserved.

Reproduction in any manner whatsoever without the written permission of Dell Inc. is strictly forbidden. Trademarks used in this text: Dell, the DELL logo and PowerVault are trademarks of Dell Inc.

Other trademarks and trade names might be used in this document to refer to either the entities claiming the marks and names or their products. Dell Inc. disclaims any proprietary interest in trademarks and trade names other than its own.

Type: 3572 Model: S3H/S4H/S5H/S6H/S7H/S8H

Printed August 2019
Read this first

Contacting Dell

For customers in the United States, call 800-WWW-DELL (800-999-3355).

**Note:** If you do not have an active Internet connection, you can find contact information about your purchase invoice, packing slip, bill, or Dell product catalog.

Dell provides online and telephone-based support and service options. Service availability varies by country and product, and some services might not be available in your area. To contact Dell for sales, technical support, or customer service issues follow the steps that are listed:

2. Verify your country or region in the **Choose A Country/Region** menu at the bottom of the page.
3. Click **Contact Us** on the left side of the page.
4. Select the appropriate service or support link that is based on your need.
5. Choose the method of contacting Dell that is convenient for you.
Contents

Note...................................................................................................................................................... ii
Read this first............................................................................................................................................ iii
Contacting Dell ........................................................................................................................................ iii

Figures.................................................................................................................................................. vii

Tables.................................................................................................................................................... xii

Safety and environmental notices ........................................................................................................ xiv
  Safety notices ........................................................................................................................................ xiv
  Laser safety and compliance .................................................................................................................. xv
  Performing the safety inspection procedure ......................................................................................... xv
  Rack safety .......................................................................................................................................... xv

Preface.................................................................................................................................................. xix

Chapter 1. Product description ........................................................................................................... 1
  Front panel .......................................................................................................................................... 2
  Cartridge magazine ............................................................................................................................... 3
  Rear panel .......................................................................................................................................... 5
  Bar code reader ................................................................................................................................... 5
  SAS host interface ................................................................................................................................. 6
  Encryption .......................................................................................................................................... 6
  Supported Internet Protocols .............................................................................................................. 6
  Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) messaging ................................................................. 6
  Network Time Protocol ...................................................................................................................... 7
  LTO tape drives .................................................................................................................................. 7
  Media .................................................................................................................................................. 8
  Logical Unit Number (LUN) scanning ................................................................................................. 9
  Location coordinates and element addresses .................................................................................... 9
  Library specifications .......................................................................................................................... 10
  Product environment .......................................................................................................................... 11
  Supported device drivers ..................................................................................................................... 12

Chapter 2. User interfaces .................................................................................................................. 13
  Operator Panel ..................................................................................................................................... 13
  Web User Interface ............................................................................................................................ 16

Chapter 3. Installation and configuration .......................................................................................... 21
  Choosing a location ............................................................................................................................... 21
  Acclimation ......................................................................................................................................... 22
  Installing in a rack ................................................................................................................................. 22
  Removing the accessor locking screw ............................................................................................... 28
  Attaching the library to a server .......................................................................................................... 28
  Configuring the library ....................................................................................................................... 30
  Configuring your library with the Web User Interface ........................................................................ 32
  Configuring your library with the Operator Panel ............................................................................. 45
  Populating the library with cartridges ............................................................................................... 48
Figures

1. TL1000 Tape Autoloader........................................................................................................................................ 1
2. Front panel components....................................................................................................................................... 2
3. Cartridge Magazine............................................................................................................................................. 4
4. Cartridge magazine (top view).......................................................................................................................... 4
5. Rear panel components................................................................................................................................... 5
6. LTO half height tape drive............................................................................................................................... 8
7. Location coordinates.......................................................................................................................................... 10
8. Operator Panel components............................................................................................................................. 13
9. Library ready screen......................................................................................................................................... 15
10. Password entry screen..................................................................................................................................... 16
11. Screen elements.............................................................................................................................................. 16
12. Confirmation screen....................................................................................................................................... 16
13. Login page....................................................................................................................................................... 17
14. User account window.................................................................................................................................... 18
15. Superuser account window............................................................................................................................. 19
16. Administrator account window........................................................................................................................ 20
17. Rack mount screw locations for front vertical rails....................................................................................... 23
18. Rack mount screw locations for rear vertical rails........................................................................................ 24
19. Screws for front brackets............................................................................................................................... 24
20. Attaching the front brackets to the library chassis........................................................................................ 25
21. Attaching the rear brackets to the rails.......................................................................................................... 25
22. Creating the rail assemblies........................................................................................................................... 26
23. Installing the rail assemblies.......................................................................................................................... 26
24. Securing the front of the library in the rack..............................................................................................27

25. Securing the rear of the library in the rack............................................................................................... 27

26. The cables at the rear of the library..........................................................................................................28

27. accessor locking screw............................................................................................................................. 28

28. Interface cable connection.......................................................................................................................29

29. Web User Interface login screen.............................................................................................................. 32

30. System summary...................................................................................................................................... 33

31. Cartridge assignment settings..................................................................................................................33

32. Logical library mode settings....................................................................................................................34

33. Network settings....................................................................................................................................... 35

34. Date and time settings.............................................................................................................................. 36

35. Encryption settings on a non-encryption-licensed library.......................................................................37

36. Encryption enabled settings..................................................................................................................... 38

37. Email notifications.....................................................................................................................................39

38. Trap notifications......................................................................................................................................40

39. SNMP trap settings...................................................................................................................................41

40. SNMPv3 user settings............................................................................................................................... 42

41. User access settings................................................................................................................................43

42. Add User dialog box................................................................................................................................43

43. Modify user................................................................................................................................................44

44. Save configuration.....................................................................................................................................45

45. Cartridge release gate...............................................................................................................................48

46. Incorrect (left) and correct (right) placement of release gate.................................................................49

47. Cartridge orientation................................................................................................................................49

48. Operator Panel top menus.........................................................................................................................54
49. Configuration settings..................................................................................................................................54
50. Current information....................................................................................................................................54
51. Firmware revision.....................................................................................................................................55
52. Unlock I/O station command....................................................................................................................55
53. I/O station unlocked...................................................................................................................................55
54. Unlock magazine command......................................................................................................................55
55. Move cartridge command..........................................................................................................................56
56. Unload command.......................................................................................................................................56
57. Clean Drive command...............................................................................................................................56
58. Inventory command..................................................................................................................................57
59. Online/Offline command...........................................................................................................................57
60. Move to Ship Position command..............................................................................................................57
61. Reboot Drive command.............................................................................................................................58
62. Reboot Library command..........................................................................................................................58
63. Logout command.......................................................................................................................................58
64. Auto Cleaning settings...............................................................................................................................58
65. Active slot count settings..........................................................................................................................58
66. Library access mode settings.....................................................................................................................59
67. Date and time settings................................................................................................................................60
68. Network settings......................................................................................................................................60
69. Operator Panel settings.............................................................................................................................61
70. Configuring Web GUI settings...................................................................................................................62
71. Factory default settings..............................................................................................................................62
72. Error status menu......................................................................................................................................62
73. Run Library Verify command...................................................................................................................62
74. Drive diagnostic procedures..................................................................................................................... 63
75. Web User Interface menu........................................................................................................................... 64
76. System Summary screen............................................................................................................................ 65
77. Library Map screen....................................................................................................................................66
78. Move Cartridges screen............................................................................................................................. 68
79. Unload Drive screen.................................................................................................................................. 69
80. Clean Drive screen.................................................................................................................................... 69
81. Library State screen..................................................................................................................................70
82. Inventory screen....................................................................................................................................... 70
83. Inventory progress bar............................................................................................................................... 70
84. Unlock magazine....................................................................................................................................... 70
85. User Access screen...................................................................................................................................71
86. Add User dialog box..................................................................................................................................71
87. Modify user................................................................................................................................................72
88. Password Rules screen...............................................................................................................................73
89. Physical library settings screen................................................................................................................74
90. Network settings screen............................................................................................................................76
91. Encryption settings screen for a non-encrypted-licensed library............................................................77
92. Encryption licensed settings screen........................................................................................................78
93. Date and time settings screen...................................................................................................................78
94. Email notifications....................................................................................................................................80
95. Trap notifications.......................................................................................................................................81
96. SNMP trap settings...................................................................................................................................82
97. SNMPv3 user settings................................................................................................................................83
98. Certificate screen.......................................................................................................................................84
### Tables

1. Class I Laser Product.......................................................................................................................... xv
2. Data capacity and recording format..................................................................................................... 2
3. Front panel component descriptions .................................................................................................... 3
4. Rear panel component descriptions ..................................................................................................... 5
5. Ultrium data cartridge compatibility with Ultrium tape drive ............................................................. 8
6. Physical specifications .......................................................................................................................... 10
7. Electrical specifications ......................................................................................................................... 10
8. Environmental specifications ................................................................................................................ 10
9. Operational specifications ....................................................................................................................... 11
10. Acoustical specifications ....................................................................................................................... 11
11. Operator Panel component descriptions ............................................................................................ 13
12. Location criteria .................................................................................................................................. 21
13. Default library configuration settings ................................................................................................ 30
14. Cartridge types and colors ................................................................................................................... 92
15. Nominal cartridge life: Load/unload cycles .......................................................................................... 92
16. LTO7 and LTO8 Cartridge Types ......................................................................................................... 93
17. Cartridges and VOLSERs compatible with the Ultrium Tape Drives ..................................................... 95
18. Location of the write-protect switch ..................................................................................................... 97
19. Environment for operating, storing, and shipping the LTO Ultrium Tape Cartridge ............................ 100
20. Front Panel LED indicators .................................................................................................................. 109
21. Library error codes ............................................................................................................................... 115
22. Drive error codes ................................................................................................................................. 128
23. Web user error messages ...................................................................................................................... 128
24. Trap list................................................................................................................................................... 131
25. TapeAlert flags supported by the library................................................................................................132
26. TapeAlert flags supported by the Ultrium tape drive............................................................................ 134
27. Sense key definitions..............................................................................................................................139
28. Library sense data...................................................................................................................................140
29. Ultrium Tape drive sense data................................................................................................................141
30. Ultrium Tape drive sense data - Bytes 12 and 13................................................................................. 143
31. User Accounts......................................................................................................................................... 151
Safety notices and environmental notices for this product are shown and described.

Safety notices

Observe the safety notices when this product is used. These safety notices contain danger and caution notices. These notices are sometimes accompanied by symbols that represent the severity of the safety condition.

Most danger or caution notices contain a reference number (Dxxx or Cxxx).

The sections that follow define each type of safety notice and give examples.

Danger notice

A danger notice calls attention to a situation that is potentially lethal or extremely hazardous to people. A lightning bolt symbol always accompanies a danger notice to represent a dangerous electrical condition.

A sample danger notice follows:

DANGER: An electrical outlet that is not correctly wired could place hazardous voltage on metal parts of the system or the devices that attach to the system. It is the responsibility of the customer to ensure that the outlet is correctly wired and grounded to prevent an electrical shock. (D004)

Caution notice

A caution notice calls attention to a situation that is potentially hazardous to people because of some existing condition, or to a potentially dangerous situation that might develop because of some unsafe practice. A caution notice can be accompanied by one of several symbols:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If the symbol is...</th>
<th>It means...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Lightning bolt symbol" /></td>
<td>A hazardous electrical condition with less severity than electrical danger.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Exclamation mark symbol" /></td>
<td>A hazardous condition that is not represented by other safety symbols.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Class II laser symbol" /> Class II</td>
<td>This product contains a Class II laser. Do not stare into the beam. (C029) Laser symbols are always accompanied by the classification of the laser as defined by the U. S. Department of Health and Human Services (for example, Class I, Class II).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Gear symbol" /></td>
<td>A hazardous condition due to mechanical movement in or around the product.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If the symbol is... | It means...
---|---
> 18 kg (40 lb) | This part or unit is heavy but has a weight smaller than 18 kg (39.7 lb). Use care when lifting, removing, or installing this part or unit. (C008)

A hazardous condition due to the unit’s susceptibility to electrostatic discharge.

---

Laser safety and compliance

Table 1. Class I Laser Product

The library might contain a laser assembly that complies with the performance standards set by the US Food and Drug Administration for a Class I laser product. Class I laser products do not emit hazardous laser radiation. The library has the necessary protective housing and scanning safeguards to ensure that laser radiation is inaccessible during operation or is within Class I limits. External safety agencies have reviewed the library and have obtained approvals to the latest standards as they apply.

Performing the safety inspection procedure

Before you service the unit, complete the following safety inspection procedure.

1. Stop all activity between the host and the library’s tape drive.
2. Turn off the power to the library by switching the Power button on the rear of the tape library to the Off position.
3. Disconnect the tape drive’s SAS cable.
4. Unplug the library’s power cord from the electrical outlet and the library’s power supply unit.
5. Check the library’s power cords for damage, such as a pinched, cut, or frayed cord.
6. Check the tape drive’s SAS cable for damage.
7. Check the cover of the library for sharp edges, damage, or alterations that expose its internal parts.
8. Check the cover of the library for proper fit. It should be in place and secure.
9. Check the product label at the rear of the library to make sure that it matches the voltage at your outlet.

Rack safety

The following general safety information must be used for all rack-mounted devices.

DANGER
Observe the following precautions when working on or around your IT rack system.

- **Heavy equipment** - personal injury or equipment damage might result if mishandled.
- Always lower the leveling pads on the rack cabinet.
- Always install stabilizer brackets on the rack cabinet.
- To avoid hazardous conditions due to uneven mechanical loading, always install the heaviest devices in the bottom of the rack cabinet. Always install servers and optional devices starting from the bottom of the rack cabinet.
- Rack-mounted devices are not to be used as shelves or work spaces. Do not place objects on top of rack-mounted devices. In addition, do not lean on rack mounted devices and do not use them to stabilize your body position (for example, when working from a ladder).

- Each rack cabinet might have more than one power cord.
  - For AC powered racks, be sure to disconnect all power cords in the rack cabinet when directed to disconnect power during servicing.
  - For racks with a DC power distribution panel (PDP), turn off the circuit breaker that controls the power to the system unit(s), or disconnect the customer’s DC power source, when directed to disconnect power during servicing.
- Connect all devices installed in a rack cabinet to power devices installed in the same rack cabinet. Do not plug a power cord from a device installed in one rack cabinet into a power device installed in a different rack cabinet.
- An electrical outlet that is not correctly wired could place hazardous voltage on the metal parts of the system or the devices that attach to the system. It is the responsibility of the customer to ensure that the outlet is correctly wired and grounded to prevent an electrical shock. (R001 part 1 of 2)

**Caution**

- Do not install a unit in a rack where the internal rack ambient temperatures might exceed the manufacturer's recommended ambient temperature for all your rack-mounted devices.
- Do not install a unit in a rack where the air flow is compromised. Ensure that air flow is not blocked or reduced on any side, front, or back of a unit that is used for air flow through the unit.
- Consideration must be given to the connection of the equipment to the supply circuit so that overloading of the circuits does not compromise the supply wiring or overcurrent protection. To provide the correct power connection to a rack, refer to the rating labels on the equipment in the rack to determine the total power requirement of the supply circuit.
- (For sliding drawers) Do not pull out or install any drawer or feature if the rack stabilizer brackets are not attached to the rack. Do not pull out more than one drawer at a time. The rack might become unstable if you pull out more than one drawer at a time.
(For fixed drawers) This drawer is a fixed drawer and must not be moved for servicing unless specified by the manufacturer. Attempting to move the drawer partially or out of the rack might cause the rack to become unstable or cause the drawer to fall out of the rack. (R001 part 2 of 2)

Caution

Removing components from the upper positions in the rack cabinet improves rack stability during relocation. Follow these general guidelines whenever you relocate a populated rack cabinet within a room or building:

- Reduce the weight of the rack cabinet by removing equipment, starting at the top of the rack cabinet. When possible, restore the rack cabinet to the configuration of the rack cabinet as you received it. If this configuration is not known, you must do the following:
  - Remove all devices in the 32U position (compliance ID RACK-001) or 22U (compliance ID RR001) and above.
  - Ensure that the heaviest devices are installed in the bottom of the rack cabinet.
  - Ensure that there are little-to-no empty U-levels between devices installed in the rack-cabinet below the 32U (compliance ID RACK-001) or 22U (compliance ID RR001) level, unless the received configuration specifically allowed it.

- If the rack cabinet you are relocating is part of a suite of rack cabinets, detach the rack cabinet from the suite.
- If the rack cabinet you are relocating was supplied with removable outriggers, they must be reinstalled before the cabinet is relocated.
- Inspect the route that you plan to take to eliminate potential hazards.
- Verify that the route that you choose can support the weight of the loaded rack cabinet. Refer to the documentation that comes with your rack cabinet for the weight of a loaded rack cabinet.
- Verify that all door openings are at least 760 x 2032 mm (30 x 80 in.).
- Ensure that all devices, shelves, drawers, doors, and cables are secure.
- Ensure that the four leveling pads are raised to their highest position.
- Ensure that no stabilizer bracket is installed on the rack cabinet during movement.
- Do not use a ramp that is inclined at more than 10 degrees.
- When the rack cabinet is in the new location, complete these steps:
  - Lower the four leveling pads.
  - Install stabilizer brackets on the rack cabinet or in an earthquake environment bolt the rack to the floor.
  - If you removed any devices from the rack cabinet, repopulate the rack cabinet from the lowest position to the highest position.
• If a long-distance relocation is required, restore the rack cabinet to the configuration of the rack cabinet as you received it. Pack the rack cabinet in the original packaging material, or equivalent. Also, lower the leveling pads to raise the casters off the pallet and bolt the rack cabinet to the pallet. (R002)

• **DANGER:** Racks with a total weight of > 227 kg (500 lb.), Use Only Professional Movers! (R003)

Caution

• Rack is not intended to serve as an enclosure and does not provide any degrees of protection required of enclosures.
• It is intended that equipment installed within this rack will have its own enclosure. (R005)
• Tighten the stabilizer brackets until they are flush against the rack. (R006)
• Use safe practices when lifting. (R007)
• Do not place any object on top of a rack-mounted device unless that rack-mounted device is intended for use as a shelf. (R008)
• If the rack is designed to be coupled to another rack only the same model rack should be coupled together with another same model rack. (R009)

Danger

Main Protective Earth (Ground): This symbol is marked on the frame of the rack. The PROTECTIVE EARTHING CONDUCTORS must be terminated at that point. A recognized or certified closed loop connector (ring terminal) must be used and secured to the frame with a lock washer using a bolt or stud. The connector must be properly sized to be suitable for the bolt or stud, the locking washer, the rating for the conducting wire used, and the considered rating of the breaker. The intent is to ensure the frame is electrically bonded to the PROTECTIVE EARTHING CONDUCTORS. The hole that the bolt or stud goes into where the terminal connector and the lock washer contact must be free of any non-conductive material to allow for metal to metal contact. All PROTECTIVE BONDING CONDUCTORS must terminate at this main protective earthing terminal or at points marked with . (R010)

Always ensure that a load of 95 kg (210 lb) is inside the bottom of the rack (compliance ID RR001), especially before relocating or servicing units with their Center of Gravity (CoG) higher than 22U. (R011)
This manual contains information and instructions necessary for the setup, operation, and servicing of the Dell™ PowerVault™ TL1000 Tape Library.
The Dell™ PowerVault™ TL1000 Tape Autoloader provides compact, high-capacity, low-cost solutions for simple, unattended data backup. The library has a compact 1U form factor with easy access to tape cartridges with a removable magazine. It is equipped with a SAS (Serial Attached SCSI) host adapter attachment that has a data transfer rate of up to 6.0 Gbps. The TL1000 Tape Autoloader is an external stand-alone or rack-mountable unit that incorporates:

- Ultrium 8 Half Height Tape Drive (Model S8H)
- Ultrium 7 Half Height Tape Drive (Model S7H)
- Ultrium 6 Half Height Tape Drive (Model S6H)
- Ultrium 5 Half Height Tape Drive (Model S5H)
- Ultrium 4 Half Height Tape Drive (Model S4H)

The TL1000 Tape Autoloader has a 10-position removable cartridge magazine, providing a maximum of 9 data cartridge positions, or a maximum of 8 data cartridge positions with a configurable 1-slot I/O station. One position is reserved as the tape drive exchange position and can be accessed by the library only. The library data storage capacity can be further increased by using hardware compression.
See Table 2 on page 2 for more information on supported tape cartridges in the TL1000 Tape Autoloader. WORM for and later is also supported.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Native Data Capacity</th>
<th>Recording Format</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 8</td>
<td>12 TB (30 TB at 2.5:1 compression)</td>
<td>Reads and writes data on 6656 tracks, 32 tracks at a time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium M8</td>
<td>9 TB (22.5 TB at 2.5:1 compression)¹</td>
<td>Reads and writes data on 3584 tracks, 32 tracks at a time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 7</td>
<td>6 TB (15 TB at 2.5:1 compression)</td>
<td>Reads and writes data on 3584 tracks, 32 tracks at a time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 6</td>
<td>2.5 TB (6.25 TB at 2.5:1 compression)</td>
<td>Reads and writes data on 2176 tracks, 16 tracks at a time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 5</td>
<td>1.5 TB (3 TB at 2:1 compression)</td>
<td>Reads and writes data on 1280 tracks, 16 tracks at a time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 4</td>
<td>800 GB (1.6 TB at 2:1 compression)</td>
<td>Reads and writes data on 896 tracks, 16 tracks at a time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 3</td>
<td>400 GB (800 GB at 2:1 compression)</td>
<td>Reads and writes data on 704 tracks, 16 tracks at a time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 2</td>
<td>200 GB (400 GB at 2:1 compression)</td>
<td>Reads and writes data on 512 tracks, 8 tracks at a time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 1</td>
<td>100 GB (200 GB at 2:1 compression)</td>
<td>Reads and writes data on 384 tracks, 8 tracks at a time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹Library Firmware must be at 0080 or greater to support the LTO M8 media feature. Drive firmware must be at HB82 or greater to support the LTO M8 media feature. Ensure that any device drivers are at the minimum level that is required to support the library.

**Front panel**

![Front panel components](image)

*Figure 2. Front panel components*
### Table 3. Front panel component descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Operator Panel</td>
<td>The Operator Panel features a monochrome 16-character LCD graphic display that is on the front of the library. Library operations and service functions are completed from this screen. The Web User Interface offers some of the same functionality as the Operator Panel with a web browser for remote access to the library. For information about the Operator Panel and the Web User Interface, see Chapter 2, “User interfaces,” on page 13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Control keys</td>
<td>The control keys are located to the right of the Operator Panel LCD display on the front of the library.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Cartridge magazine</td>
<td>The tape library has a single cartridge magazine that can hold up to 9 data cartridges, or 8 data cartridges with a 1-slot I/O station. See Figure 3 on page 4. Column 5/Tier 1 in the cartridge magazine can be configured as a 1-slot I/O station. Column 5/Tier 2 in the cartridge magazine is reserved for the exchange position and can be accessed by the library only. The I/O station is used to import and export cartridges without interrupting normal library operation. Beginning with Column 4, a minimum of one column can be reserved for cleaning cartridges. Cleaning cartridges are used to clean the tape drive heads. For configuration details, see Chapter 3, “Installation and configuration,” on page 21.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Cartridge magazine release</td>
<td>Emergency cartridge magazine lock release. When the I/O station is locked, insert a large, straightened paper clip twice or hold the paper clip in place while the cartridge magazine slides past the I/O station lock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Air vents</td>
<td>These vents draw cooler air into the library enclosure and allow warm air to escape which helps keep the library at a normal operating temperature.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Cartridge magazine**

---

Chapter 1. Product description 3
Figure 3. Cartridge Magazine

1. Cartridge locations as they appear in the Library Map.

Note: These labels are for reference only and do not display on the magazine.

2. Cartridge magazine

3. Magazine handle

Figure 4 on page 4 shows the cartridge location label 1, and ruler 2 that appear on the cartridge magazine. The ruler provides an indication of the distance, when the magazine is opened or withdrawn, to the end of the magazine before it clears the front edge of the library. To prevent dropping the magazine, support both ends of the magazine before it clears the front edge of the library.

Figure 4. Cartridge magazine (top view)
Rear panel

Figure 5. Rear panel components

Table 4. Rear panel component descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Power connector</td>
<td>The library connects to a 110/220 volt ac power supply.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Power switch</td>
<td>The library is powered ON when the power supply switch on the rear panel is ON ((^\text{ON})). The library has no independent power switch on the front panel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>SAS host interface connector</td>
<td>Serial-attached SCSI host interface cable connection. The Ultrium 4, 5, 6, and 7 SAS drives use the SFF-8088 connection at the drive end and SFF-8088 or SFF-8470 at the host adapter end.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Ethernet port</td>
<td>This port is used to connect the library to a network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Accessor locking screw</td>
<td>The accessor locking screw is used to lock the accessor in place during transportation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Important:</strong> Remove the accessor locking screw before the library is powered ON.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Air vent</td>
<td>These vents allow air to escape from the power supply and tape drive sled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bar code reader

The bar code reader is a part of the library accessor. The bar code reader reads each cartridge bar code label that identifies the types of cartridge magazines and tape drive that is installed in the library. It also
provides inventory feedback to the host application, Operator Panel, and Web User Interface. The library stores the customized inventory data in memory. Library firmware supports a 6 or 8-character volume serial number (VOLSER) on the bar code label on the tape cartridge.

**SAS host interface**

The Half Height Tape Drives and later, support the Serial Attached SCSI (SAS) interface. The SFF-8088 SAS connector on the Ultrium 5 tape drives and later, are compatible with SAS-1 or SAS-2 cables.

A drive with a SAS (Serial Attached SCSI) interface is linked directly to controllers. SAS is a performance improvement over traditional SCSI. SAS enables multiple devices (up to 128) of different sizes and types to connect simultaneously with thinner and longer cables. Its full-duplex signal transmission supports 6.0 Gb/s for S4H and later. In addition, the TL1000 Tape Autoloader is hot-plugged, if necessary. SAS drives can auto-negotiate speed.

**Encryption**

The LTO Ultrium 4 and later Tape Drives support host Application Managed Encryption (AME) with T10 encryption methods, for SAS drives. Data encryption is only supported by LTO Ultrium 4 Data Cartridges and later.

**Note:** Application Managed Encryption (AME) does not require a key.

The encryption enabled drive contains the necessary hardware and firmware to encrypt and decrypt host tape application data. Encryption policy and encryption keys are provided by the host application or host server. A drive digital certificate is installed at manufacturing time. Each drive receives a unique serial number and certificate. The T10 application validates each drive instance by checking the drive’s digital certificate.

The LTO Ultrium encryption environment is complex and requires knowledge beyond that of product trained Service Support Representatives (SSRs). The Encryption function on tape drives, whether it’s a desktop, a stand-alone drive, or within libraries, is configured and managed by the customer. In some instances, SSRs are required to enable encryption at a hardware level when service access or service password-controlled access is required. Customer setup support is by Field Technical Sales Support (FTSS), customer documentation, and software support for encryption software problems. Customer 'how to' support is also provided by way of support line contract.

Use the encryption-capable library firmware to select **None** or **Application Managed** encryption from the Web User Interface. The factory default is **None**.

**Supported Internet Protocols**

The TL1000 Tape Autoloader supports the Internet protocols:

- IPv4
- IPv6


**Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) messaging**

Occasionally, the library might encounter a situation that you want to know about, such as an open magazine or a fault that causes the library to stop. The library provides a standard TCP/IP protocol called Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP). SNMP can send alerts about conditions (such as need for operator intervention) over a TCP/IP LAN network to an SNMP monitoring station. These alerts are called SNMP traps. With the information that is supplied in each SNMP trap, the monitoring station (together
with customer-supplied software) can alert operations personnel of possible problems or operator interventions that occur.

All of the automation products support SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) and all of them support SNMP read and walk capability.

The new Configuration capability of SNMP Query provides a common Management Information Base (MIB) across all of the tape libraries. This capability allows a product administrator to audit the settings of all of their tape libraries to ensure that they comply with their own policies.

**SNMP traps**

SNMP Traps are alerts or status messages that can be collected, monitored, and used to proactively manage attached libraries with SNMP protocol with the SNMP monitoring stations. In summary, each trap provides the following information.

- **Product Identification** such as product name, description, manufacturer, model number, firmware level, and the URL that the trap is designated for.
- **Product Status** such as the severity of the trap, status (current and previous) and the time the trap occurred.
- **Library State** (physical device status) such as identification and status of devices that is monitored. It would include enclosure, power supply, controller, magazine status, drive count, cartridge slot count, and I/O station count. Also included would be certain library statistics, and where appropriate, the fault FSC (fault symptom code) including the severity and description of that fault.
- **Drive Status** such as the identification of each drive in the library, firmware level, serial number, and other address and status information.
- **Trap Definitions** such as library status change, open magazine, I/O accessed, hard fault information, requests to clean the drive, excessive retries, and returning to normal operations.
- **SNMP MIBs** The library’s MIB contains units of information that specifically describe an aspect of the system, such as the system name, hardware number, or communications configuration. When with SNMP to monitor your TL1000 Tape Autoloader, make sure that the TL1000 MIB file is loaded on your SNMP monitoring station. SNMP traps are sent to the SNMP monitoring stations that are defined for your library (see “Configuring trap notifications” on page 39).

**Network Time Protocol**

NTP is an Internet standard protocol that assures accurate synchronization of computer clock times in a network of computers. Running as a continuous background client program on a computer, NTP sends periodic time requests to a server, obtaining server time stamps, and with them to adjust the client’s clock.

**LTO tape drives**

The TL1000 Tape Autoloader supports the and later half height tape drives.

The LTO 3 and later half height tape drives support the Serial Attached SCSI (SAS) interface. They have one Mini-SAS (SFF-8088) connector.
Figure 6. LTO half height tape drive

**Speed matching**

To improve system performance, the LTO 3 and later tape drives use a technique that is called *speed matching*. Speed Matching dynamically adjusts the native (uncompressed) data rate to the slower data rate of the attached server.

**Channel calibration**

The channel calibration feature of the LTO 3 and later tape drives customizes each read/write data channel for optimum performance. The customization enables compensation for variations in the recording channel transfer function, media characteristics, and read/write head characteristics.

**Power® management**

The LTO 3 and later tape drives feature a power management function. This function controls the drive's electronics so that part of the electronics completely turns OFF when circuit functions are not needed for the drive's operation.

**Media**

The TL1000 Tape Autoloader uses Ultrium tape cartridges that provide up to 12 TB native capacity (up to 30 TB with 2.5:1 hardware data compression) for Ultrium 8 tape drives.

For information on native data capacity, see Table 2 on page 2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tape Drive</th>
<th>LTO Ultrium Data Cartridges</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12 TB ultrium 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTO8</td>
<td>Read/Write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTO7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTO6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTO5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 5. Ultrium data cartridge compatibility with Ultrium tape drive (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tape Drive</th>
<th>LTO Ultrium Data Cartridges</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12 TB Ultrium 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTO4</td>
<td>Read/Write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTO3</td>
<td>Read/Write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTO2</td>
<td>Read/Write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTO1</td>
<td>Read/Write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹Library Firmware must be at 0080 or greater to support the LTO M8 media feature. Drive firmware must be at HB82 or greater to support the LTO M8 media feature. Ensure that any device drivers are at the minimum level that is required to support the library.

**Note:** The TL1000 Tape Autoloader supports the and later tape drives only.

For more information about media compatibility, see Chapter 5, “Media,” on page 91.

---

**Logical Unit Number (LUN) scanning**

The TL1000 Tape Autoloader uses a single SCSI ID and dual LUNs to control the tape drive (LUN 0) and library accessor (LUN 1). The library requires a Host Bus adapter (HBA) that supports LUN scanning. If it is not enabled, your host system cannot scan beyond LUN 0 and fails to detect the library. It sees only the tape drive.

**Important:** Some HBAs, such as RAID controllers, do not support LUN scanning.

---

**Location coordinates and element addresses**

The TL1000 Tape Autoloader incorporates patented high-density (HD) slot technology, which allows multiple cartridges to be stored in a tiered architecture. The depth of a cartridge location in a high-density slot is known as a tier. High-density slots are designed to contain multiple cartridges in Tiers 1 and 2.

**Note:** Each column has a spring-loaded mechanism that pushes a tape cartridge into Tier 1 when it is the only cartridge in that column. A single cartridge in a column takes on the Tier 2 element address even though it is physically in Tier 1.
A storage element address is assigned to each cartridge at the time the cartridge is inserted. Storage element addresses range from 4097 to 4105 (0x1001 to 0x1009) when the I/O station is not enabled, and from 4097 to 4104 (0x1001 to 0x1008) when the I/O station is enabled.

**Library specifications**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 6. Physical specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parameter</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front panel width (chassis/bezel)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight (library only)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 7. Electrical specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parameter</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power consumption</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more information about installation specifications, see Chapter 3, “Installation and configuration,” on page 21.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 8. Environmental specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parameter</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature variation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative humidity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wet bulb temperature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altitude (meters)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 8. Environmental specifications (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Operating (see Note)</th>
<th>Storage</th>
<th>Shipping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Note: The operating environment of the library must not conflict with the media storage requirements. The library can operate at elevated temperatures for an extended period. However, the temperature might shorten the useful life of media that is stored in the library. If media is stored in the library for more than 10 hours, the storage temperature requirements for media are met. It is assumed that media that is stored in the library is approximately 2 degrees above ambient temperature when the library is powered ON.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 9. Operational specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Model S8H</th>
<th>Model S7H</th>
<th>Model S6H</th>
<th>Model S5H</th>
<th>Model S4H</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum storage capacity</td>
<td>108 TB (270 TB with 2.5:1 compression)</td>
<td>54 TB (135 TB with 2.5:1 compression)</td>
<td>22.5 TB (56.2 TB with 2.5:1 compression)</td>
<td>13.5 TB (27 TB with 2:1 compression)</td>
<td>7.2 TB (14.4 TB with 2:1 compression)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum number of data cartridges</td>
<td>9 (including an optional I/O Station)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive types</td>
<td>Ultrium 8 Half Height</td>
<td>Ultrium 7 Half Height</td>
<td>Ultrium 6 Half Height</td>
<td>Ultrium 5 Half Height</td>
<td>Ultrium 4 Half Height</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sustained native data transfer rate</td>
<td>300 MB/s (750 MB/s with 2.5:1 compression)</td>
<td>300 MB/s (750 MB/s with 2.5:1 compression)</td>
<td>160 MB/s (400 MB/s with 2.5:1 compression)</td>
<td>140 MB/s (280 MB/s with 2:1 compression)</td>
<td>120 MB/s (240 MB/s with 2:1 compression)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface</td>
<td>6 Gb/s SAS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3 Gb/s SAS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The Ultrium 4 Half Height tape drive in S4H libraries that are manufactured after March 2011 support 6.0 Gb/s and a sustained native data rate of 120 Gb/s.

### Table 10. Acoustical specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Measurement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Idling acoustical noise sound power level LwAD in Bels (1 Bel = 10 dB)</td>
<td>6.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum acoustical noise sound power level LwAD in Bels (1 Bel = 10 dB)</td>
<td>6.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Product environment

The TL1000 Tape Autoloder is designed to operate in a general business environment.

The library meets the acoustical requirements for general business area category 2D. Category 2D states that the library can be installed a minimum of 4 m (13 ft.) from a permanent work station.

To allow for service access, install the library a minimum of 0.9 m (3 ft.) from all obstacles.

The library is a precision computer peripheral device. To ensure maximum longevity of your library, locate the library away from dust, dirt, and airborne particulates, as follows:

- Keep the library away from high-traffic areas, especially if the floor is carpeted. Carpeting harbors dust and walking on the carpet can cause the carpet fibers and the dust to become airborne.
- Keep the library out of printer and copier rooms because of toner and paper dust. Additionally, do not store paper supplies next to the library.
- Keep the library away from moving air caused by doorways, open windows, fans, and air conditioners.
Ensure that the machine covers are always kept closed to minimize any contamination from airborne particles.

Supported device drivers

Device drivers enable the drive to interact with various servers. For applications that use device drivers, see the application's documentation to determine which drivers to use.

**Note:** If you do not have Internet access and you need information about device drivers, contact your sales representative.
Chapter 2. User interfaces

The library has a local interface, the Operator Panel, and a remote Web User Interface (UI).

The Operator Panel is on the front of the library and allows users to work locally on the library. The Web User Interface allows users and administrators to view and perform some library functions from remote sites.

Operator Panel

The Operator Panel is on the front bezel of the library. The Operator Panel displays library information and menu commands that are used to run library management functions in response to the control keys on the right of the LCD display.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>LCD display</td>
<td>16-character LCD graphic display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Up key (Δ)</td>
<td>Button that is used to navigate upward (↑) through the menu items</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Down key (∇)</td>
<td>Button that is used to navigate downward (↓) through the menu items</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Cancel key</td>
<td>Button that is used to cancel a user action and return to the last menu item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Enter key</td>
<td>Button that is used to display a submenu or to select a user action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Ready/Activity LED</td>
<td>Green LED lit when the unit is powered ON. The LED flashes when there is any library activity or the library is offline.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Clean Drive LED</td>
<td>Amber LED lit when the drive needs cleaning. The LED turns OFF after the drive is cleaned successfully.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 8. Operator Panel components

Table 11. Operator Panel component descriptions
### The Operator Panel lends its name to two basic modes:

- **User Interaction mode** - Mode that is employed when a user is pushing keys on the Operator Panel.
- **System Driven mode** - Normal mode of operation where the Operator Panel displays status in response to commands issued from the drive's internal interface.

When an Operator Panel key is pressed and released, the Operator Panel automatically changes to User Interaction mode. User Interaction mode continues until 3 minutes after a user stops pushing keys, or the requested accessor action stops, whichever is longer. Then, the Operator Panel returns to System Driven mode.

If necessary, the Operator Panel automatically changes to System Driven mode. When this change occurs, the library remembers what the user was doing before the display mode changed.

Any operational conflict between commands that are received over the host interface or the Web User Interface and those commands that are entered by way of the Operator Panel are avoided with a reservation mechanism on a first-come, first-served basis. Operator Panel commands are canceled by an Operator Panel logout or timeout.

Library firmware does not allow a user to select an impossible request. Those situations include, but are not limited to:

- Moving a cartridge from any source to a position occupied by another cartridge
- Moving a cartridge from an empty cartridge position
- Loading a cartridge from any source to a full drive
- Unloading a cartridge from an empty drive

Any error that is detected by the library or drive controller and not recoverable through predetermined firmware algorithms is considered unrecoverable. When an error occurs, an error code is displayed on the Operator Panel display and the error LED is ON. The error code remains on the Operator Panel until a key is pressed, which causes the Operator Panel to return to the Home Screen. Numeric error codes are used for unrecoverable errors. Otherwise, text status messages are displayed.

When the library powers ON or resets, it goes through several internally controlled initialization processes, called the Power-On-Self-Test (POST).

### Front panel LEDs

All LEDs are updated during power ON and reset sequences. At power ON or software reset, all LEDs turn ON as soon as POST allows. When initialization starts, all LEDs turn OFF and the Ready/Activity LED flashes at a rate of approximately 2 seconds per cycle. When the mechanical initialization is complete, the Ready/Activity LED stops flashing and turns ON.

If a library failure occurs, the Ready/Activity LED turns OFF and the Error LED turns ON. The Operator Panel also displays an appropriate error code to help identify the failure.

The following are more operational details of LEDs:

---

### Table 11. Operator Panel component descriptions (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Attention LED</td>
<td>Amber LED lit when a cartridge is incompatible with the drive, marginal, or invalid. The LED turns OFF when the media is removed from the drive. The LED might also be lit when there is a power supply problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Error LED</td>
<td>Amber LED lit when there is an unrecoverable library or drive failure. The corresponding error message displays on the LCD display.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• The Ready/Activity LED (6 in Figure 8 on page 13) turns ON any time the unit is powered ON and functional. The Ready/Activity LED flashes whenever there is library. This LED also flashes when the library is offline.

• The Clean Drive LED (7 in Figure 8 on page 13) turns ON when a “cleaning required” command is issued by the drive. The LED turns OFF after a successful drive cleaning operation.

• The Attention LED (8 in Figure 8 on page 13) turns ON to indicate that a piece of media is bad/marginal, or invalid. The LED turns OFF when all marginal and invalid cartridges are exported from the library. The Attention LED also turns ON if Autoclean is enabled and no cleaning cartridge is in a cleaning position.

• The Error LED (9 in Figure 8 on page 13) turns ON when there is an unrecoverable drive or library failure. An error message is displayed on the screen and the LED remains ON until the error state is resolved.

For information, see “Interpreting front panel LEDs” on page 108.

Input modes

There are several ways to enter values in the different menu items. These values are selectable predefined values, toggle values (for example, ON/OFF) and numerical values like network addresses.

Selecting predefined values

1. To set the predefined values, press Enter to select the menu item.
2. With the Plus and Minus keys, select one of the various predefined values for that item.
3. As soon as the Operator Panel display shows the correct value, press Enter to apply the value.

Toggling values

Toggle values are used to switch between two different states like ON and OFF.

1. After you navigate to the menu item, press Enter to select the menu item.
2. With the Plus and Minus keys, select one of the various predefined states for that item.
3. Press Enter to apply the new state.

Entering numerical values

Numerical values are needed for network addresses, password entries, and other configuration entries.

1. After you navigate to the menu item, the current value is displayed and the cursor highlights the first digit of the value that can be changed.
2. For each digit to be changed in the value:
   a. Use the Plus and Minus keys to increment or decrement the digit.
   b. Press Enter to highlight the next editable digit.
3. Press Enter at the last digit to apply the complete entry. Press Cancel to cancel the whole edit process and maintain the original value.

Logging in

At power ON or software reset, the library ready screen displays when POST initialization completes successfully.

![Push ENTER Key to Login](image)

Figure 9. Library ready screen
To log in to the Operator Panel, press the **Enter** key. The password entry screen displays.

![Password entry screen](image1)

*Figure 10. Password entry screen*

Press the **UP** and **DOWN** arrow keys to change the current digit. Press the **Enter** key to advance to the next digit. The default password is **0000**. When you are logged in, you can change the password with the **Change Login Password** command. See “Configuring Operator Panel settings” on page 61.

**Screen elements**

![Screen elements](image2)

*Figure 11. Screen elements*

The Operator Panel displays a single menu item (**1** in Figure 11 on page 16) on each screen. The existence of other menu items above and below the currently displayed item is indicated by the arrows (**2** in Figure 11 on page 16) on the right side of the screen.

In the **Configuration** menu, the current configuration setting is indicated by an asterisk (**3** in Figure 11 on page 16) on the right side of the screen. For example, in Figure 11 on page 16, the I/O station is enabled. When a configuration setting is changed, the confirmation screen in Figure 12 on page 16 displays. Press **Enter** to confirm, or **Cancel** to return to the previous screen.

![Confirmation screen](image3)

*Figure 12. Confirmation screen*

**Web User Interface**

You can use the Web User Interface to update the library and drive firmware, and to download error logs, drive memory dumps, and other library data.

Before the TL1000 Tape Autoloader can be managed over a network with the Web User Interface, set up the initial network configuration of the library with the Operator Panel. For information, see “Configuring network settings” on page 46.

**Logging in**

To log in to the Web User Interface from Internet Explorer, you must enter the IP address of the library. The IP address can be obtained with the **View Settings** command from the Operator Panel. For example, http://192.168.1.1.

After the Web User Interface is started, the login window is displayed.
The factory default account login and password for an Administrator account is
• Account: admin
• Password: secure

The account name and password are case-sensitive. After your account name and password are entered, use your mouse to click Login or press Enter.

**Note:** You must change the password during the initial login.

For information about account privileges, see “User privileges” on page 20.

**Common header elements**

All Web User Interface windows (except for the Login screen) contain the following common elements in the header

• **Logoff** - Click to log out of the Web User Interface.

• **Help** - Click to read context-sensitive help for the associated page.

**Menus available from the Web User Interface**

Figure 14 on page 18 shows the Web User Interface window for a User account, Figure 15 on page 19 shows the window for a Superuser account, and Figure 16 on page 20 shows the window for an Administrator account.
Figure 14. User account window
Figure 15. Superuser account window
Figure 16. Administrator account window

For a complete description of all Web User Interface menu options, see Chapter 4, “Operations,” on page 52.

User privileges

User privilege levels are manually assigned to user accounts created within the library. Controlling access to screens and operations within the library preserves the integrity of the library and the data that is stored within the library.

There are four types of user privileges in the library.

- **Users** are allowed to monitor the library, but not complete actions that affect the physical library.
- **Superusers** are allowed to operate the physical and logical library, but not complete actions that affect the library configuration.
- **Administrator** users are allowed access to the entire physical library and logical library, including configuration. Only one administrator user must be assigned the login name `admin`.
- **Service** - Service access permission allows users to complete tape library functions and change configuration settings. In addition, service access permission allows the use of diagnostic tools to help identify and resolve library and drive problems.

User privileges include

- Multiple users can be logged in at one time on the Web User Interface.
- Any user can be logged in to only one interface at a time.
To install and configure a TL1000 Tape Autoloader, complete these procedures in the order they are presented.

### Chapter 3. Installation and configuration

- "Choosing a location” on page 21
- "Acclimation” on page 22
- "Installing in a rack” on page 22
- "Removing the accessor locking screw” on page 28
- "Attaching the library to a server” on page 28
- "Configuring your library with the Web User Interface” on page 32
  - "Logging in to the Web User Interface” on page 32
  - "Checking firmware level” on page 32
  - "Configuring library settings” on page 33
  - "Configuring network settings” on page 35
  - "Configuring date and time settings” on page 36
  - "Configuring encryption settings” on page 37
  - "Configuring email notifications” on page 38
  - "Configuring trap notifications” on page 39
  - "Managing user access” on page 42
  - "Saving the library configuration” on page 45
- "Configuring your library with the Operator Panel” on page 45
  - "Logging in to the Operator Panel” on page 46
  - "Configuring network settings” on page 46
  - "Configuring library settings” on page 47
- "Populating the library with cartridges” on page 48
- "Verifying library and drive operation” on page 50
- "Taking the library online” on page 50
- "Registering for support notification” on page 51

### Choosing a location

**Table 12. Location criteria**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criteria</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Room temperature</td>
<td>16 - 32 °C (60 - 90 °F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage</td>
<td>100 - 240 Vac. (4.0 to 1.5 A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
<td>The power switch is on the rear of the library and must be easily accessible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>50 - 60 Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 12. Location criteria (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criteria</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Relative humidity</td>
<td>20 - 80% non-condensing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air quality</td>
<td>The library must be placed in an area with minimal sources of particulate contamination. Avoid areas near frequently used doors and walkways, stacks of supplies that collect dust, printers, and smoke-filled rooms. Excessive dust and debris can damage cartridges and the tape drive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearance</td>
<td>• Back: Minimum of 15 cm (6 in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Front: Minimum of 30 cm (12 in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Sides: Minimum of 5 cm (2 in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rack requirements</td>
<td>Standard EIA 19-inch rack: 1U space</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Acclimation

Server and storage equipment (racks and frames) must be gradually acclimated to the surrounding environment to prevent condensation.

When server and storage equipment (racks and frames) is shipped in a climate where the outside temperature is below the dew point of the destination (indoor location), there is a possibility that water condensation can form on the cooler inside and outside surfaces of the equipment when the equipment is brought indoors.

Sufficient time must be allowed for the shipped equipment to gradually reach thermal equilibrium with the indoor environment before you remove the shipping bag and energize the equipment. Follow these guidelines to properly acclimate your equipment:

- Leave the system in the shipping bag. If the installation or staging environment allows it, leave the product in the full package to minimize condensation on or within the equipment.
- Allow the packaged product to acclimate for 24 hours. If there are visible signs of condensation (either external or internal to the product) after 24 hours, acclimate the system without the shipping bag for an additional 12 - 24 hours or until no visible condensation remains.
- Acclimate the product away from perforated tiles or other direct sources of forced air convection to minimize excessive condensation on or within the equipment.

1 Unless otherwise stated by product-specific installation instructions.

**Note:** Condensation is a normal occurrence, especially when you ship equipment in cold-weather climates. All IBM® products are tested and verified to withstand condensation that is produced under these circumstances. When sufficient time is provided to allow the hardware to gradually acclimate to the indoor environment, there should be no issues with long-term reliability of the product.

### Installing in a rack

The TL1000 Tape Autoloader can be easily installed into a standard 19-inch rack system. A standard 19-inch rack system contains multiple mounting locations that are called EIA units as defined by the Electronics Industries Association. Each EIA unit contains three square or round holes that are used to mount rack designed equipment. The library requires 1 EIA unit (1U) of rack space. Each unit is separated by a small space.
When you decide on a location in your rack for the library, consider that the Operator Panel has a small LCD screen. The library must be positioned to allow for easy viewing. The rear of the library must be free from any obstructions to allow easy access to the power switch and other rear panel components.

**Note:** Before you begin the rack installation of the library, read the safety information in “Rack safety” on page xv. Also, verify that no desktop feet are attached to the bottom of the library.

To install the library in a rack:

1. Verify that your rack kit includes all the necessary contents.
2. Determine the location in your rack for your library to be installed. With a pencil, mark the location on the front vertical rails (Figure 17 on page 23) and rear vertical rails (Figure 18 on page 24) in your rack.

![Figure 17. Rack mount screw locations for front vertical rails](image-url)
3. Place the screws 11 into the left and right brackets.

4. Attach the left 3 and right 4 (Figure 20 on page 25) front brackets to the front of the library chassis with 2 flat-head screws 8 on each side. Use the top two screw holes on each side. The flange of each bracket with the inserted screws 11 fits into the cutout on each side of the bezel.
5. Attach the left 1 and right 2 rear brackets to the left 5 and right 6 front rails with 2 round-head screws 10 on each side (Figure 21 on page 25).

![Figure 20. Attaching the front brackets to the library chassis](image)

**Important:** Do NOT tighten these screws completely.

6. Slide in the rear rails 7 from back to front, to create the rail assemblies. Ensure that the screw holes face outwards (Figure 22 on page 26).

![Figure 21. Attaching the rear brackets to the rails](image)
7. Install the rail assemblies into the rack (Figure 23 on page 26). Ensure the 3 holes in the front of the unit align with the 1U space marked on the vertical rails in Step 2. Secure the rails to the rack with 4 flat-head screws on each side of the rack. Use both of the two screw locations on the rear of the rack rail (Figure 18 on page 24). Use the top and middle screw locations on the front of the rack rail (Figure 17 on page 23).

8. Slide the library chassis into the rack. The heads of the large screws appear through the oval openings on each side of the bezel. Use a Phillips screwdriver to attach these screws to the rack (Figure 24 on page 27).
9. Secure the rear of the library to the rack with a round-head screw 10 on each rear bracket (Figure 25 on page 27). Tighten the other rear bracket screws to secure the library to the rack.

10. Run the SAS cable, power cable, and Ethernet cable through the hook-and-loop fastener strap 12. Leave enough slack to reach the corresponding connectors, then tighten the strap (Figure 26 on page 28).
Figure 26. The cables at the rear of the library

Note: For information about converting and relocating the library, see Chapter 8, “Removal and replacement procedures,” on page 113.

**Removing the accessor locking screw**

**Important:** The accessor locking screw prevents the library accessor from moving during shipment and must be removed before the library is powered ON.

Remove the accessor locking screw, located on the rear panel of the library (1 in Figure 27 on page 28).

![Figure 27. accessor locking screw](image)

**Attaching the library to a server**

The drive is attached to a server with the Serial Attached SCSI (SAS) interface. The Web User Interface accesses the library with an ethernet interface.

**Connecting the Host Interface cables**

To connect the host interface cable to the library:

**Note:** It is recommended that you shut down and turn OFF the associated server before you connect the SAS interface cable. Turn ON the associated server after the SAS interface cable is connected to the library and server, the library is powered ON, and the library completed the initialization.
Figure 28. Interface cable connection

1. Attach an ethernet cable to the ethernet port (1 in Figure 28 on page 29)
   
   **Note:** On rack mount installations, run the cable through the hook-and-loop fastener strap on the right rear bracket.

2. Attach the host end of the SAS cable to the drive’s SAS connector (2 in Figure 28 on page 29). See “SAS host interface” on page 6 for information about the type of SAS connector that is required for attachment to the drive.

   **Note:** On rack mount installations, run the cable through the hook-and-loop fastener strap on the right rear bracket.

3. Attach the other end of the host SAS interface cable to the host or to an interposer if required.

4. • Method 1: Plug the ethernet cable into your server or PC to access the Web User Interface directly. This method modifies your server or PC network settings to match the library default settings. You can also use the library Operator Panel to change the library network settings to match the server or PC network settings before you use the Web User Interface to access the library. If the ethernet connection is directly attached to a server or a PC, a crossover ethernet cable might be required.

   • Method 2: Plug the ethernet cable into an ethernet switch or router to access the Web User Interface on a LAN (local area network). The library network settings must be entered with the Operator Panel before the Web User Interface is used to access the library.

**Connecting the power cord**

**Note:** This product can ONLY be used with an approved power cord for your specific geographic region. Use of an unapproved power cord might result in

• Not meeting individual country-specific safety requirements
• Overheating with potential personal injury or property damage
• A fracture that results in internal contacts that are exposed, which might subject the user to a shock hazard

To connect a power cord:

1. Plug one end of the power cord or rack PDU power cord into the power connector (3 in Figure 28 on page 29) on the rear panel of the library.
Note: On rack mount installations, run the rack PDU power cord through the hook-and-loop fastener strap on the right rear bracket, and tighten the strap. The rack PDU power cord is a special power cord that plugs into a rack power strip.

2. Plug the other end of the power cord into the nearest properly grounded power outlet. On rack mount installations, plug the other end of the rack PDU power cord into the nearest rack PDU.

3. Power ON the library by toggling the power switch on the power supply to the ON (I) position.

4. Wait for the library to initialize.

   During initialization, the library completes a Power ON Self Test (POST) to ensure that the library hardware is functional. The library also tests communications with the tape drive over the internal bus.

Note: If the Operator Panel does not initialize, check all cable connections, and ensure that the cartridge magazine is closed and in the locked position. Ensure that the power supply switch is in the ON position. If the Operator Panel still does not initialize, see Chapter 6, “Troubleshooting,” on page 101.

Important: To disconnect all power from the library, turn the power switch to the OFF position, then remove the power cord from the outlet. The power switch removes power from portions of the library and the drive, but the power supply still has ac power at its input.

Note: When the library is power-cycled, wait 10 seconds after the power is OFF before the library is powered ON again.

Configuring the library

The library can be configured with the Web User Interface or the Operator Panel. The preferred method for configuring your library is by using the Web User Interface. See “Configuring your library with the Operator Panel” on page 45 and “Configuring your library with the Web User Interface” on page 32.

For complete detailed information about all of the functions available on the library with the Operator Panel and the Web User Interface, see Chapter 4, “Operations,” on page 52.

The default library configuration settings are listed in Table 13 on page 30.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration Item</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>NETWORK</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethernet link speed</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSL security</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv4 settings</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol)</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Static IP address</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv4 address</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subnet mask</td>
<td>255.255.255.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gateway</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv6 settings</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol)</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stateless auto-configuration</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Static IP address</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Item</td>
<td>Default Setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv6 address</td>
<td>0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prefix length</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gateway</td>
<td>0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNS setting</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNS IP address</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PHYSICAL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration Item</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Library name</td>
<td>(Blank)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Cleaning</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bar code label length</td>
<td>8 characters</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LOGICAL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration Item</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Library mode</td>
<td>Random</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loop</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Load</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active slots</td>
<td>9 + 0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ENCRYPTION (S4H and LATER ONLY)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration Item</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Encryption method</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DATE and TIME**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration Item</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NTP server</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTP server address</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time zone (GMT)</td>
<td>+00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date (MM/DD/YYYY)</td>
<td>01/08/2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto adjustment by PC</td>
<td>Every 1 minute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTIFICATIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration Item</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SMTP (mail) settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail server address</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail event</td>
<td>Error events enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNMP (trap) settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community</td>
<td>Public</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trap event</td>
<td>Error events enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNMPv3 engine ID</td>
<td>(Set by library firmware)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Static library network settings must be entered with the Operator Panel before the library can be accessed remotely with the Web User Interface. If your system is serviced by a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server, the network parameters are automatically set. Once remote access is established, you can complete the configuration of your library remotely.

If you choose to use the Operator Panel to configure your library, go to “Configuring your library with the Operator Panel” on page 45.
Configuring your library with the Web User Interface

If you choose to use the Web User Interface to configure your library, first enter your library network settings with the Operator Panel (see “Configuring network settings” on page 60).

To configure your library with the Web User Interface:
1. “Logging in to the Web User Interface” on page 32
2. “Checking firmware level” on page 32
3. “Configuring library settings” on page 33
4. “Configuring network settings” on page 35
5. “Configuring date and time settings” on page 36
6. “Configuring encryption settings” on page 37
7. “Configuring email notifications” on page 38
8. “Configuring trap notifications” on page 39
9. “Managing user access” on page 42
10. “Saving the library configuration” on page 45

Logging in to the Web User Interface

To log in to the Web User Interface:
1. If necessary, obtain the IP address of the library on the Operator Panel.
   a. From the top menu of the Operator Panel, press the Minus key to select View Current Information, and press Enter.
   b. Press the Minus key until the IP Address setting is displayed and make a note of the IP address.
   c. Press the Cancel key repeatedly to log out of the Operator Panel.
2. Open Internet Explorer on your server or PC to access the Web User Interface.
3. In the browser address field, enter your library's IP address URL to start the Web User Interface applet in the browser window. For example, http://192.168.1.1
4. On the Web User Interface login screen, enter the administrator login account name and default password.
   • Account: admin
   • Password: secure

   ![Figure 29. Web User Interface login screen](image)

   5. Click Login.

   Note: You must change the password during the initial login.

Checking firmware level

Check the current level of library firmware that is displayed in the Versions box of the System Summary page. If an updated level of firmware is available, download and update the library firmware before normal operation starts. See “Updating library and drive firmware” on page 89.
Figure 30. System summary

Configuring library settings

Physical library settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Physical Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Library name:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto cleaning:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bar code label length:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 31. Cartridge assignment settings

To configure the library cartridge assignment settings, complete the following procedure:

1. In the **Configure Library** menu in the left navigation pane of the Web User Interface, click **Physical/Logical**
2. In the **Physical Settings**, enter the Library settings:
   - **Library name** - Enter a name for your library.
   - **Auto Cleaning** - Automatically cleans the drive when the drive requests that cleaning and a cleaning cartridge is present in the library. Auto cleaning can be enabled only when there is at least one inactive position in the magazine in the library.

   **Note:** It is recommended to enable the **Auto Clean** function on the library. With the **Auto Clean** function enabled, drive cleaning occurs automatically. The only time Auto Cleaning must be disabled is when your Backup Application requires that it has control.
• **Bar code label length** - Use to choose the number of characters in the cartridge bar code that is reported to the host computer.

3. Click **Submit** to enable the settings.

**Logical library settings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Logical Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Library mode:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Random</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loop:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto load:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of active slots: 6-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 active storage, I/O enabled, automatic cleaning allowed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 32. Logical library mode settings**

To configure the library access mode settings for the logical library:

1. In the **Configure Library** menu in the left navigation pane of the Web User Interface, click **Physical/Logical**

2. In the **Logical Settings**, select the **Library Mode**:

   - **Random** - In random mode, the library allows the server's (host's) application software to select any data cartridge in any order.

   - **Sequential** - In sequential mode, the library's firmware predefines the selection of the cartridges. After initialization, the firmware causes the library to select the first available cartridge found (counting from the lowest Column/Tier position through the highest cartridge position in your library) for loading into the drive. See "Location coordinates and element addresses" on page 9.

     - **Loop** - When **Library mode** is **Sequential** with **Loop mode** **Enabled**, the cartridge in the lowest Column/Tier cartridge position is loaded after the cartridge in the highest Column/Tier cartridge position is filled with data and sent back to its home position. This mode allows endless backup operations without user interaction.

     - **Auto load** - When **Library mode** is **Sequential** with **Auto load** mode **Enabled**, the first available cartridge (the lowest Column/Tier cartridge position that contains a cartridge) is loaded automatically if the library powers ON, or resets, with an empty drive. If the library powers ON with a cartridge already in the drive, sequential mode starts from the home position of that cartridge, unless the host issues a rewind and unload command to the drive. In which case the next cartridge in sequence will be loaded into the drive.

   To start Sequential mode if **Auto load** is not **Enabled**, use the **Move Cartridge** command to load the first cartridge into the drive. The sequence starts from the home position of that cartridge. Cartridges need not to be in contiguous slots.

   To stop Sequential mode, use the **Move Cartridge** command to unload the drive. This command cancels Sequential mode; the next sequential cartridge is NOT loaded.

   To restart Sequential mode, use the **Move Cartridge** command again to load a cartridge; the loading sequence resumes from the home position of that cartridge.

   - **Number of active slots** - Select the number of active slots to assign in your library. Selecting the number of active slots defines the number of storage slots, number of cleaning/inactive slots, whether the I/O Station is enabled/disabled, and whether auto cleaning is allowed. The first digit configures the number of active storage positions (4, 6, 8, or 9). The second digit configures Column 5, Tier 1 of the magazine as an I/O Station (0 when disabled, and 1 when enabled). The **Auto Cleaning** function can be enabled only if there is at least one inactive position in the magazine. If **Auto Cleaning** is enabled, the inactive positions become cleaning cartridge positions.

3. Click **Submit** to enable the settings.
Configuring network settings

Once the network settings are entered on the Operator Panel, the current network configuration of the library can be modified with the Web User Interface. The changes that are made to the network settings take effect after the library is rebooted.

### Network

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ethernet</th>
<th>Link speed:</th>
<th>Auto</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Security</th>
<th>Enable SSL for Web</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IPv4 Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use IPv4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obtain an IP address automatically (DHCP)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use static IP address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv4 address:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subnet mask:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gateway:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IPv6 Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use IPv6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obtain an IP address automatically (Stateless Auto Configuration)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obtain an IP address automatically (DHCP)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use static IP address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prefix length (0-128):</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DNS Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use DNS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNS IP address:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Submit

*Figure 33. Network settings*

To modify the network settings:

1. In the **Configure Library** menu in the left navigation pane of the Web User Interface, click **Network**.
2. Select the Ethernet **Link speed** (duplex mode).
3. In **Security**, select **Enable SSL for Web** to provide secure communications between the web browser and the tape library.
4. Select the TCP/IP settings. To enable dual IPv4/IPv6 protocol, select both **Use IPv4** and **Use IPv6** and enter parameters for both.

- **IPv4 settings** - Select **Use IPv4** to enable the IPv4 Internet Protocol. Select the corresponding button to obtain an IP address automatically (DHCP) or use static IP address settings. When with DHCP, use the Operator Panel to determine the library’s assigned IP address. See “Configuring network settings” on page 60. Enter the following parameters if **Use static IP address** is selected.

Chapter 3. Installation and configuration 35
– **IPv4 address** - Sets the TCP/IPv4 address of the library on the network.
– **Subnet mask** - Defines and limits users within a local network.
– **Gateway** - Allows access outside the local network.

**IPv6 settings** - Select Use IPv6 to enable the IPv6 Internet Protocol. Select the corresponding button or check box to obtain an IP address automatically (DHCP), to obtain an IP address with stateless auto configuration, or to use static IP address settings. Enter the following parameter if Use static IP address is selected.

– **IPv6 address** - Sets the TCP/IPv6 address of the library on the network.
– **Prefix length** - Decimal value that indicates the number of contiguous, high-order bits comprising the network portion of the address.
– **Gateway** - Allows access outside the local network.

5. In **DNS settings**, select Use DNS to use a domain name server. The DNS server, if entered, allows the encryption, date and time, and notifications IP addresses to be specified with host names instead of numerical IP addresses.

– **DNS IP address** - Sets the IP address of the DNS server.

6. Click **Submit** to enable the settings.

**Note:** The changes that are made to the network settings take effect after the library is rebooted.

### Configuring date and time settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date and Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NTP server address:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time zone (UTC):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date (MM/DD/YYYY):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time (HH:MM:SS):</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 34. Date and time settings**

Configure the date and time settings with one of three methods: automatically with a remote NTP time server on the network, automatically with the clock on your host computer, or manually.

**Note:** If you manually set your date and time, you must reset the date and time after the library is power-cycled and after a library reset.

**Note:** When the library is power-cycled, wait 10 seconds after the power is OFF before the library is powered ON again.

Once the network settings are entered on the Operator Panel, the current date and time can be modified with the Web User Interface.

The TL1000 Tape Autoloader communicates with an NTP server with the following conditions:

- Client/server basis operation
- UDP (User Datagram Protocol) to access the NTP server
- Does not use authentication keys
- Library polling is every 12 hours

To modify the date and time settings:

1. In the **Configure Library** menu in the left navigation pane of the Web User Interface, click **Date and Time**.
2. Select the **Date and Time** settings.

- Select the **Enable NTP Server** check box to enable time and date control with a time server on the network.
  - **NTP server address** - Enter the IP address of the time server. IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported, depending on the TCP/IP settings. Host names can be entered instead of numerical IP addresses if **Use DNS** is selected in the **Network** settings.
  - **Time zone** - Enter the time zone relative to Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).
- If the time server is disabled, enter the local time and date manually.
  - **Date** - Enter the date with the MM/DD/YYYY format.
  - **Time** - Enter the time with the HH:MM:SS format.
- Click **Load PC date time** to synchronize the library with the clock on your host computer at regular intervals.

3. Click **Submit** to update the settings.

### Configuring encryption settings

![Encryption settings](image)

**Figure 35. Encryption settings on a non-encryption-licensed library**

Depending on the product you purchased, encryption is enabled or disabled in the factory. If encryption is enabled, then the **Encryption method** menu includes **Application Managed** and **Library Managed** encryption options. Also, an additional box, **Feature Activation Key**, displays the message, "**Encryption is currently licensed.**" If encryption is disabled, then the **Encryption method** menu only allows for **Application Managed** as an encryption option.

Before you can use the encryption capability of the tape drive, you must be sure that certain software and hardware requirements are met.
To modify the encryption settings:

1. In the **Configure Library** menu in the left navigation pane of the Web User Interface, click **Encryption**
2. In the **Encryption method**: drop-down menu, choose **Application Managed** or **Library Managed** to enable encryption in your library. No further configuration steps are necessary.

   **Note:** If your library has encryption licensed, Library Managed Encryption and Application Managed Encryption are supported. If your library does not have encryption licensed, only Application Managed Encryption is supported.

3. Click **Submit** to enable the settings.

**Configuring email notifications**
To set up email notifications of library events:

1. In the **Configure Library** menu in the left navigation pane of the Web User Interface, click **SMTP**.
2. Configure the **Send server** settings.
   - **SMTP server address** - SMTP mail server address. IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported. Host names can be entered instead of numerical IP addresses if the DNS server is specified in the Network settings.
   - **Sender address** - Mail header information.
   - **Subject** - Mail header information.
3. Enter the email addresses to be notified when an event takes place in the **Mail To** fields, and click the **Enable** check boxes to select each address.
4. Select the event level to report in the **Mail Event** settings.
5. Click **Test** to send a test email message to the enabled addresses.
6. Click **Submit** to enable the settings.

**Configuring trap notifications**
SNMP

SNMP Settings

Community: public
Name: 
Location: 
Contact: 
SNMPv3 engine ID: 80 00 00 02 03 00 16 97 72 3A 3B

Trap Event

- Error Events
- Error and Warning Events
- Error, Warning, and Information Events

Submit

Trap List

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Validity</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Version</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Community</th>
<th>User name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
<td>v1</td>
<td>trap</td>
<td>public</td>
<td>modify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
<td>v1</td>
<td>trap</td>
<td>public</td>
<td>modify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
<td>v1</td>
<td>trap</td>
<td>public</td>
<td>modify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
<td>v1</td>
<td>trap</td>
<td>public</td>
<td>modify</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SNMPv3 User List

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Validity</th>
<th>User name</th>
<th>Authentication</th>
<th>Privacy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable</td>
<td></td>
<td>disable</td>
<td>modify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable</td>
<td></td>
<td>disable</td>
<td>modify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable</td>
<td></td>
<td>disable</td>
<td>modify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable</td>
<td></td>
<td>disable</td>
<td>modify</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 38. Trap notifications

Note: This procedure is optional. SNMP notifications are not enabled unless you have selected the SNMP Enabled check box. To disable SNMP notifications, clear the SNMP Enable check box and click Submit.

The traps that are supported by the TL1000 Tape Autoloader are listed in “Trap definitions (types)” on page 131.

To set up trap notifications for an SNMP server:

1. In the Configure Library menu in the left navigation pane of the Web User Interface, click SNMP.
2. Select the SNMP Enabled check box.
3. Configure the SNMP server and header settings.
   - Community - SNMP community name to which the library belongs.
   - Name - Unique SNMP name for the system.
   - Location - Physical location of the system.
   - Contact - Contact person's name.
   - SNMPv3 engine ID - A read-only attribute that identifies the SNMPv3 engine.
4. Enter the settings of the SNMP monitoring stations to be notified when an event takes place by clicking the **modify** buttons in the **Trap List** box.

![SNMP Trap Settings](image)

**Figure 39. SNMP trap settings**

- **Validity** - Select the check box to enable and clear the check box to disable.
- **Address** - IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported. Host names can be entered instead of numerical IP addresses if the DNS server is specified.
- **Version** - Trap version v1, v2c, or v3. For v2c and v3, the **Inform** check box determines if an SNMP INFORM request is sent instead of a trap event.
- **Community** (v1 or v2c) - SNMP community name.
- **User name** (v3 only) - SNMPv3 unique user name.
- **Authentication** (v3 only) - Authentication algorithm: **disable**, **MD5**, or **SHA**.
- **Authentication Password** - When an **Authentication** algorithm is enabled, an **Authentication Password** is required. (see “Configuring Password Rules Settings” on page 44).
- **Confirm** - Re-enter the Authentication Password to confirm it.
- **Privacy** (v3 only) - Privacy service encryption and decryption algorithm: **disable**, **DES**, or **AES**. When an algorithm is specified, a privacy password is required.
- **Privacy password** - enter a password (see “Configuring Password Rules Settings” on page 44).
- **Confirm** - Re-enter the **Privacy password** to confirm it.

5. Click **Submit** to save the SNMP Trap settings. Modify each trap's settings by repeating the previous step.

6. Enter the SNMPv3 users who are allowed to access the tape library by clicking the **modify** buttons in the **SNMPv3 User List** box.
SNMPv3 User Settings

Validity
User name
Authentication:
Authentication password:
Confirm:
Privacy:
Privacy password:
Confirm:

Validity - Select the check box to enable and clear the check box to disable.

User name - SNMPv3 unique user name.

Authentication - Authentication algorithm: disable, MD5, or SHA. When an algorithm is specified, an authentication password is required.

Authentication password - enter a password (see “Configuring Password Rules Settings” on page 44).

Confirm - Re-enter the Authentication password to confirm it.

Privacy - Privacy service encryption and decryption algorithm: disable, DES, or AES. When a privacy algorithm is specified, a privacy password is required.

Privacy password - enter a password (see “Configuring Password Rules Settings” on page 44).

Confirm - Re-enter the Privacy password to confirm it.

7. Select the event level to report in the Trap Event box.
8. Click Test to send a test trap notification to the enabled IP addresses.
9. Click Submit to enable the settings.

Managing user access

To add, modify, or remove users that are able to access the library with the Web User Interface:

1. In the Configure Library menu in the left navigation pane of the Web User Interface, click User Access.
2. To add, modify, or remove a user account, do the following:

- **Add a user account:**
  
  a. Click **Add**

  ![Add User dialog box](image)

  **Add a User**

  - **User Name**
  - **Password**: 
  - **Confirm**: 
  - **Role**: 

    ![Submit button](image)

  b. Enter the **User Name** and **Password** into the dialog box and assign the user's role. Re-enter password to **Confirm**.

  c. Select one of the following from the **Role** menu:

    - **User** - User access permission allows users to monitor the library, but not to complete functions that affect the library.
    - **Superuser** - Superuser access permission allows users to operate the physical and logical library, but not to change configuration settings.
    - **Administrator** - Administrator access permission allows users to complete tape library functions and change configuration settings.
    - **Service** - Service access permission allows users to complete tape library functions and change configuration settings. In addition, service access permission allows the use of diagnostic tools to help identify and resolve library and drive problems. The service account user can no longer change the passwords for other account users.

  d. Click **Submit** to save the new user.
Note: A new user's Password status is set to Expired. A new user is presented with a Login failure message and given the opportunity to create a new password.

• Modify a user account:
  a. Observe the Password status of the user:
    - Available: The password is available to be changed.
    - Expired: The maximum password age was exceeded. **The password is now invalid.**
    - Unchangeable: The minimum password age was not exceeded. **You cannot change the password.**
    - Locked: The maximum number of failed login attempts for the account was exceeded.
      
      Note: An administrator must unlock the account by modifying the account and entering a new password. The Password status changes to Expired.
  b. Click Modify next to the User Name of the account.

  ![Modify a User](image)

  Figure 43. Modify user

c. Enter and confirm a new password (see “Configuring Password Rules Settings” on page 44).

d. Select one of the following from the Role menu:
    - User - User access permission allows users to monitor the library, but not to complete functions that affect the library.
    - Superuser - Superuser access permission allows users to operate the physical and logical library, but not to change configuration settings.
    - Administrator - Administrator access permission allows users to complete tape library functions and change configuration settings.
    - Service - Service access permission allows users to complete tape library functions and change configuration settings. In addition, service access permission allows the use of diagnostic tools to help identify and resolve library and drive problems.

e. Click Submit to save the modified user account.

• Remove a user account
  a. Click Remove next to a User Name to delete the account from the system.

3. Enter all user IDs and passwords on the Library Configuration form in Appendix D, “Library Configuration Form,” on page 149.

**Configuring Password Rules Settings**

The Password Rules box displays the rules for user passwords.

- **Minimum number of characters** - Choose the minimum password length. The factory default value is 8. The maximum password length is 16.
- **Minimum number of upper case alphabetic characters (A-Z)** - Choose the minimum number of uppercase alphabetic characters. The factory default value is 1.
• **Minimum number of lower case alphabetic characters (a-z)** - Choose the minimum number of lowercase alphabetic characters. The factory default value is 1.

• **Minimum number of numeric characters (0-9)** - Choose the minimum number of numeric characters. The factory default value is 1.

• **Minimum number of special characters (!@#$%^&*()_+={}|[]\';:"<>?,./)** - Choose the minimum number of special characters. The factory default value is 0.

• **Maximum number of identical consecutive characters** - Choose the maximum number of identical consecutive characters. The factory default value is 2. There is no limitation if 0 is selected.

• **Maximum number of failed logins before password is locked** - Choose the maximum number of failed logins before the password is locked. The factory default value is 5. Possible range for this configuration option is 0 - 10. There is no limitation if 0 is selected.

• **Maximum number of days before password must be changed** - Choose the maximum number of days before the password must be changed. There is no limitation if 0 is selected.

• **Minimum number of days before password can be changed** - Choose the minimum number of days before the password can be changed. A password can be changed immediately if 0 is selected.

• **Number of password changes before an old password can be used again** - Choose the number of password changes that are required before a password can be used again. A password can be reused immediately if 0 is selected.

Click **Submit** to save all the information.

### Saving the library configuration

#### Save / Restore

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Save Library Settings</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Save</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Restore Library Settings</th>
<th>Setting file: <a href="#">Browse...</a></th>
<th>No file selected.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Restore</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Figure 44. Save configuration*

**Note:** This procedure is recommended.

Each time that you change the configuration of your library, save the configuration. This function also maintains several library configuration profiles that can be restored to the library when wanted with the Web User Interface.

To save a library configuration:

1. In the **Configure Library** menu in the left navigation pane of the Web User Interface, click **Save/Restore**

2. In the **Save Library Settings** box, click **Save** to create a configuration file of your library on your computer.

### Configuring your library with the Operator Panel

To configure your library with the Operator Panel, complete the following procedures:

1. “Logging in to the Operator Panel” on page 46
2. “Configuring network settings” on page 46
3. “Configuring library settings” on page 47
Logging in to the Operator Panel

In many environments, the default network settings might be sufficient to access your tape library on a network. To change the default network settings with the Operator Panel, complete the following procedure:

1. When the library is initialized, press **Enter** to move to the **Password** screen.
2. Enter **0000**, the default password. The top menu screen displays.
3. When finished with the Operator Panel, press **Cancel** to return to the top menu screen.
4. When finished, press the **Minus** key to select **Logout**, and press **Enter**.

Configuring network settings

In many environments, the default network settings might be sufficient to access your tape library on a network. To change the default network settings with the Operator Panel, complete the following procedure:

1. From the top menu screen, press the **Minus** key to select **Configuration**, and press **Enter**.
2. Link speed (Default: Auto Negotiation)
   a. Select **Configure Network Settings > Configure Link Speed**.
   b. Select the required speed and press **Enter**.
   c. Press **Enter** again to apply the setting, or **Cancel** to reject the setting.
   
   The speed must be set to **Set Auto Negotiation** for gigabit Ethernet networks.
   d. Press **Cancel** to backtrack through the menu hierarchy.
3. DHCP IPv4 (Default: Enabled)
   a. Select **Configure Network Settings > Configure DHCP > Configure DHCPIPv4**.
   b. Select **Enable DHCP IPv4** and press **Enter** to enable, or press **Down** and select **Disable DHCP IPv4** to disable.
   c. Press **Enter** again to apply the setting, or **Cancel** to reject the setting.
   d. Press **Cancel** to backtrack through the menu hierarchy.
4. DHCP IPv6 (Default: Disabled)
   a. Select **Configure Network Settings > Configure DHCP > Configure DHCPIPv6**.
   b. Select **Enable DHCP IPv6** and press **Enter** to enable, or press **Down** and select **Disable DHCP IPv6** to disable.
   c. Press **Enter** again to apply the setting, or **Cancel** to reject the setting.
   d. Press **Cancel** to backtrack through the menu hierarchy.
5. IPv4/IPv6 Address (Default: 0.0.0.0). If DHCP is disabled, set the IP address manually.
   a. Select **Configure Network Settings > Change IP Address**.
   b. Select **Set IP Address IPv4** to enter the IPv4 address of the tape library. **Set IP Address IPv6** to enter the IPv6 IP address (split over 4 screens).
   c. Press **Enter** again to apply the setting, or **Cancel** to reject the setting.
   d. Press **Cancel** to backtrack through the menu hierarchy.
6. IPv4 Subnet Mask (Default: 255.255.255.0). If DHCP IPv4 is disabled, set the IPv4 subnet mask manually.
   a. Select **Configure Network Settings > Change Subnet Mask > Set Subnet Mask**.
   b. Enter the IPv4 subnet mask.
   c. Press **Enter** again to apply the setting, or **Cancel** to reject the setting.
   d. Press **Cancel** to backtrack through the menu hierarchy.
7. IPv6 Prefix Length (Default: 64). If DHCP IPv6 is disabled, set the IPv6 prefix length manually.
a. Select **Configure Network Settings > Change Subnet Mask > Set Prefix Length**.
b. Enter the IPv4 prefix length.
c. Press **Enter** again to apply the setting, or **Cancel** to reject the setting.
d. Press **Cancel** to backtrack through the menu hierarchy.

8. IPv4/IPv6 Gateway (Default: 0.0.0.0). If DHCP is disabled, set the IP address manually.
   a. Select **Configure Network Settings > Change Gateway**.
   b. Select **Set Gateway Address IPv4** to enter the IPv4 gateway address or **Set Gateway Address IPv6** to enter the IPv6 gateway address (split over 4 screens).
   c. Press **Enter** again to apply the setting, or **Cancel** to reject the setting.
   d. Press **Cancel** to backtrack through the menu hierarchy.

9. Press **Cancel** to return to the **Network Settings** menu.

10. Press **Cancel** to return to the **Configuration** menu.

11. Press **Cancel** to return to the top menu screen.

**Configuring library settings**

To configure the library settings, complete the following procedure.

1. From the top menu screen, press the **Minus** key to select **Configuration**, and press **Enter**.
2. Select **Configure Library**, and press **Enter**.
3. **Active Slots** (Default: All)
   a. Select **Configure Library > Set Active Slots Count**.
   b. Select the number of active slots you would like to assign for the logical library.
   c. To enable I/O station, select **Active and I/O X Active + 1 I/O**.
   d. To disable I/O station, select **Active and I/O X Active + 0 I/O**.
   e. Press **Enter** again to apply the setting, or **Cancel** to reject the setting.

4. **Library Mode** (Default: Random)
   a. Select **Configure Library > Configure Library Mode**.
   b. Select **Set Random Mode** or **Configure Sequential Mode**, and press Enter.

   **Random**  - In random mode, the library allows the server's (host's) application software to select any data cartridge in any order.

   **Sequential**  - In sequential mode, the library's firmware predefines the selection of the cartridges. After initialization, the firmware causes the library to select the first available cartridge found (counting from the lowest Column/Tier position through the highest cartridge position in your library) for loading into the drive.

   • **Loop** - Sequential mode with loop mode ON loads the cartridge in the lowest Column/Tier cartridge position after the cartridge in the highest Column/Tier cartridge position is filled with data and sent back to its home position. This procedure allows endless backup operations without user interaction.

   • **Autoload** - Sequential mode with autoload mode ON loads the first available cartridge (the lowest Column/Tier cartridge position that contains a cartridge) automatically if the library powers ON, or resets, with an empty drive. If the library powers ON with a cartridge already in the drive, sequential mode starts from the home position of that cartridge, unless the host issues a rewind and unload command to the drive. In which case the next cartridge in sequence is loaded into the drive.

   To start sequential mode if autoload is OFF, use the **Move Cartridge** command to load the first cartridge into the drive. The sequence starts from the home position of that cartridge. Cartridges need not to be in contiguous slots.
To stop sequential mode, use the **Move Cartridge** command to unload the drive. This command cancels sequential mode; the next sequential cartridge is NOT loaded.

To restart sequential mode, use the **Move Cartridge** command again to load a cartridge; the loading sequence resumes from the home position of that cartridge.

c. Press **Enter** again to apply the setting, or **Cancel** to reject the setting.

d. Press **Cancel** to backtrack through the menu hierarchy.

5. Date/Time - Enter the local time and date manually if you do not plan to use a network-based time server.

   a. Select **Configure Library > Configure Date/Time**.
   
   b. Select **Set Date** or **Set Time**, and press **Enter**.
   
   • **Date** - Enter the date with the MM/DD/YYYY format.
   
   • **Time** - Enter the time with the HH:MM:SS format.

   c. Press **Cancel** to backtrack through the menu hierarchy.

6. Auto Cleaning (Default: Disabled)

   a. Select **Configuration > Configure Auto Cleaning**.

   b. Select **Enable Auto Cleaning** or **Disable Auto Cleaning**, and press **Enter**. The Auto Cleaning function is enabled only if there is at least one inactive position in the magazine in the library.

   c. Press **Enter** again to apply the setting, or **Cancel** to reject the setting.

   d. Press **Cancel** to backtrack through the menu hierarchy.

---

**Populating the library with cartridges**

The magazine is opened with the Operator Panel.

To populate the library with data and cleaning cartridges, complete the following procedure:

1. From the top menu screen on the Operator Panel, press the Minus key to select **Unlock Magazine**, and press **Enter**, or from Web User Interface: **Manage Library > Unlock Magazine**.

2. Insert cartridges in the magazine.

   **Note:** A blue release gate (1 in Figure 45 on page 48) in the upper left corner of each column in the cartridge magazine prevents each cartridge from falling out of the front of the magazine. When manually releasing the gate with one hand, position your other hand in front of the column opening to protect cartridges that are ejected by the internal column spring.

   ![Figure 45. Cartridge release gate](Figure 45. Cartridge release gate)
Figure 46. Incorrect (left) and correct (right) placement of release gate

**Note:** Column 5 Tier 2 is reserved as the exchange position. This position is accessible by the library only. A locking mechanism prevents insertion of a cartridge into the reserved slot.

Each cartridge must be inserted with the indicator arrow on the leading edge of the upper surface of the cartridge pointing towards the cartridge magazine (see Figure 47 on page 49).

**Note:** Do not rely on the bar code label orientation, if attached, to provide an indication of the correct cartridge orientation. The bar code label is right side up if attached correctly.

Figure 47. Cartridge orientation

The Auto Cleaning function can be enabled only if the number of active slots is less than the maximum available slots. The active slots are always enabled starting with the lowest numerical cartridge position number in the magazine. This position is at the drive end of the cartridge magazine. Place cleaning cartridges in inactive cartridge positions for use by the auto cleaning function.

Do not store data or cleaning cartridges in the I/O Station (Column 5, Tier 1) if the I/O station is enabled.

3. Put the magazine back into the library and wait for the library inventory to complete. Then, you can proceed to the next step.

4. Press **Cancel** to return to the top-level menu.
Verifying library and drive operation

To verify the library is operating correctly:

1. From the top menu screen on the Operator Panel, press the Minus key to select Service, and press Enter.
2. Press the Minus key to select Diagnostics, and press Enter.
3. Select Run Library Verify, and press Enter. Follow the on-screen instructions.
   - If there is a cartridge in a drive, the library moves the cartridge to its home position, or to the I/O station if the home position is not known.
4. When prompted, insert a customer supplied scratch cartridge into the I/O station.
   - When the scratch cartridge is loaded, the bar code reader reads the bar code label on the cartridge and stores it for later comparison. The cartridge is then moved to the tape drive, where the drive runs its own write/read/verify test. When the test is done, the library tells the drive to eject the cartridge, and then the cartridge is moved back to the I/O station. The bar code is read again and compared with the value stored earlier.
5. When prompted, remove the cartridge from the I/O station.
   - The result of the test is reported on the Operator Panel.
   - If an error occurs, note the error code number and see Appendix A, “Error codes,” on page 115.
6. Press Cancel to return to the top-level menu.

Taking the library online

When your library is configured, you are ready to save the library configuration and take the library online.

**Note:** The tape drive is always online, regardless of whether the library is online or offline.

To take the library online with the Operator Panel:

1. From the top menu screen, press the Minus key to select Commands, and press Enter.
2. Select Change Library State, and press Enter.
3. Select Set Library Online, and press Enter.
4. Press Cancel repeatedly to return to the top-level menu.
5. Press the Minus key to select Logout, and press Enter.

To take the library online with the Web User Interface:

1. Save the library configuration.
   - a. In the Configure Library menu in the left navigation pane of the Web User Interface, click Save/Restore.
   - b. Click Save, and then enter a file name and select a location to save the configuration file.
2. Verify the library state.
   - a. In the Manage Library menu in the left navigation pane of the Web User Interface, click Library State.
   - b. If the library is offline, click Bring Online.
   - c. Click Yes to confirm when prompted.
   - A message dialog displays when the operation is completed.
3. Click Logoff in the upper right corner of the window.
Registering for support notification

Support notification registration provides email notification when new firmware levels are updated and are available for download and installation.

Enter your user name and password on the Appendix D, “Library Configuration Form,” on page 149.

**Note:** Library firmware and tape drive firmware are verified and released together. When the latest firmware is updated, verify that all installed components such as the tape drive and library are at the latest levels noted on the Support website. Mixing different levels of library and tape drive firmware is not supported and might cause unpredictable results.

Dell suggests that you update library and drive firmware when new levels become available. For instructions on updating library and drive firmware, see “Updating library and drive firmware” on page 89.

Now you are ready to use your library.
### Chapter 4. Operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monitoring the Library</th>
<th>“Configuration settings” on page 54</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Current information” on page 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Firmware revision” on page 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managing the Library</td>
<td>“Unlocking the I/O station” on page 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Unlocking the cartridge magazine” on page 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Moving cartridges” on page 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Unloading the drive” on page 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Cleaning the drive manually” on page 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Conducting a library inventory” on page 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Taking the library online and offline” on page 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Powering down the library” on page 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Shipping the library” on page 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Rebooting the drive” on page 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Rebooting the library” on page 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Logging out of the library” on page 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring the Library</td>
<td>“Configuring auto cleaning” on page 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Configuring the number of active slots” on page 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Configuring the library access mode” on page 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Configuring date and time settings” on page 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Configuring network settings” on page 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Configuring Operator Panel settings” on page 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Configuring Web GUI Settings” on page 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Setting the library to factory defaults” on page 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Servicing the Library</td>
<td>“Checking the library error status” on page 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Running library verify diagnostic procedures” on page 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Running drive diagnostic procedures” on page 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Operator Panel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 48 on page 54 shows the top-level menu tree structure of the Operator Panel on the front of the TL1000 Tape Autoloader. For details on how to select commands and options, see the description in “Operator Panel” on page 13.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Monitoring the library

Configuration settings

Use Configuration > View Settings to display a list of the library configuration settings. The settings that are displayed include:

- Library settings
  - I/O station (On/Off)
  - Auto cleaning (On/Off)
  - Number of cleaning slots when Auto cleaning is enabled
  - Operator Panel back light setting
- Network settings
  - Link speed
  - IP address protocol
  - IPv4 settings (IP address, subnet mask address, gateway address, DHCP)
  - IPv6 settings (IP address, gateway address, prefix length, DHCP, stateless Auto configuration)
- Drive settings
  - Model number

Current information

Use View Current Information to display the network settings information. The settings that are displayed include:

- Network settings
  - Worldwide node name
  - IP address protocol stack
  - IP address
**Firmware revision**

*Figure 51. Firmware revision*

Select **Service > View Firmware Revision** to display the current version of the library firmware.

**Managing the library**

**Unlocking the I/O station**

*Figure 52. Unlock I/O station command*

Select **Unlock I/O Station** to unlock the I/O station. This menu option is available only when the I/O station is enabled in the library configuration settings.

*Figure 53. I/O station unlocked*

After the I/O station is closed, wait for the library to complete its inventory before you proceed with normal library operations.

**Note:** A blue release gate in the upper left corner of each column in the cartridge magazine prevents each cartridge from falling out of the front of the magazine. When manually releasing the gate with one hand, position your other hand in front of the column opening to protect cartridges that are ejected by the internal column spring.

**Unlocking the cartridge magazine**

*Figure 54. Unlock magazine command*

Select **Unlock Magazine** to unlock and remove the cartridge magazine.

When the cartridge magazine is unlocked, it can be removed from the library to insert or remove data and cleaning cartridges. When the cartridge magazine is fully inserted, the magazine locks into place.
After the magazine is closed, wait for the library to complete its inventory before you proceed with normal library operations.

**Note:** A blue release gate in the upper left corner of each column in the cartridge magazine prevents each cartridge from falling out of the front of the magazine. When manually releasing the gate with one hand, position your other hand in front of the column opening to protect cartridges that are ejected by the internal column spring.

**Moving cartridges**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Commands</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Move Cartridge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Slot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Slot</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Figure 55. Move cartridge command*

Select **Commands > Move Cartridge** to move data cartridges and cleaning cartridges between the I/O station, storage positions, and tape drive.

Specify the following parameters:
- **Source Slot** - Specify a source that contains a cartridge.
- **Destination Slot** - Specify the destination.

Press **Enter** to move the cartridge from the source to the destination.

**Note:** Cartridges cannot be moved to the accessor with this command, but can be moved from the accessor if, for example, the library was powered OFF with a tape still held in the Picker.

**Unloading the drive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Commands</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unload</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Figure 56. Unload command*

Select **Commands > Unload** to unload the cartridge from the tape head mechanism.

Unload when library is in Random mode: The cartridge in the drive is unloaded from the tape head mechanism, but is still retained inside the tape drive housing. The **Move Cartridge** command moves the cartridge from the drive to another location. Moving a tape cartridge from a drive to another location both unloads and moves the cartridge in a single action.

Unload when library is in Sequential mode: The cartridge in the drive is unloaded from the tape head mechanism, and returned to the cartridge home position.

Press **Enter** to unload the cartridge from the tape head mechanism.

**Cleaning the drive manually**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Commands</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clean Drive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Figure 57. Clean Drive command*

Select **Commands > Clean Drive** to clean the tape drive manually with a cleaning cartridge in either a cartridge storage position or the I/O station.

Press **Enter** to move the cleaning cartridge to the drive and start drive head cleaning. The cleaning cartridge is returned to its home position when drive cleaning is finished.
Conducting a library inventory

Select **Commands > Inventory** to force the library to run an inventory of the cartridge magazine, accessor, and tape drive to refresh the library map. An inventory is conducted automatically when power is first turned ON or when the cartridge magazine is removed and reinserted.

Press **Enter** to conduct the inventory.

Taking the library online and offline

Select **Commands > Change Library State** to take the library online or offline.

It is sometimes necessary to take the library offline before servicing functions for the library are done. Once these operations are finished, it is necessary to bring the library online.

**Note:** The tape drive is always online, even when the library is offline.

Powering down the library

Before powering OFF the library, ensure that the library is in an idle state with no mechanical movement of the accessor, and all data operations (for example, backup operations, accessing of log files) are complete. Then, power OFF the library with the power switch on the rear panel of the library.

**Important:** If you switch the library power OFF while the library is being accessed, loss of data might occur.

**Note:** When power cycling the library, wait 10 seconds after the power is OFF before the library is powered ON again.

Shipping the library

Select **Commands > Move to Ship Position** when the library is prepared to move to a new location. The accessor must be placed in a parked position within the library housing. **Move to Ship Position** finishes all active commands that are received from the host application, does not process any new commands, and moves the accessor to the parked position before the power is turned OFF.

1. When **Unlock Magazine** is displayed, press **Enter** to unlock the cartridge magazine. The magazine unlocks and the display prompts the removal of the magazine.

2. Remove all cartridges from the magazine and reinsert the magazine into the slide mechanism. The library completes an inventory to verify no cartridges are in the magazine.

3. If the magazine is empty, the library moves the accessor to the ship position. The library can be powered down. If the magazine is NOT empty, the library prompts to remove cartridges. After all cartridges are removed and the magazine is replaced, start the ship position process again.
Rebooting the drive

Select **Commands > Reboot Drive** to force the drive to reboot. You also specify whether the library will come online or offline after it finishes rebooting.

Press **Enter** to reboot the drive.

Rebooting the library

Select **Commands > Reboot Library** to force the library to reboot. You also specify whether the library will come online or offline after it finishes rebooting.

Press **Enter** to reboot the library.

Logging out of the library

Select **Logout** to log out of the library. The login screen is displayed for the next user.

Configuring the library

Configuring auto cleaning

Select **Configuration > Configure Auto Cleaning** to enable or disable automatic head cleaning of the tape drive in the library.

**Note:** It is recommended that the Auto Clean function is enabled on the library. With the Auto Clean function enabled, drive cleaning occurs automatically. The only time Auto Cleaning is disabled is when your Backup Application requires that it has control.

The drive can also be cleaned manually. For details, see “Cleaning the drive manually” on page 56.

Configuring the number of active slots

Select **Configuration > Configure Library > Set Active Slots Count** to set the number of active data cartridge positions within the logical library.
Configure the number of active slots with the following setting:

- **Active Slots** - The maximum number of active slots that can be set is dependent upon the I/O station configuration and auto cleaning setting.

The active cartridge slots always begin with the cartridge position with the lowest cartridge address within the logical library.

**Configuring the library access mode**

![Diagram of library access mode settings]

**Figure 66. Library access mode settings**

Select **Configuration > Configure Library > Configure Library Mode** to set the logical library access mode.

Configure the library access mode with the following settings:

- **Random Mode** - In random mode, the library allows the server's (host's) application software to select any data cartridge in any order.

- **Sequential Mode** - In sequential mode, the library's firmware predefines the selection of the cartridges. After initialization, the firmware causes the library to select the first available cartridge found (counting from the lowest Column/Tier position through the highest cartridge position in your library) for loading into the drive.
  
  - **Loop** - Sequential mode with loop mode ON loads the cartridge in the lowest Column/Tier cartridge position after the cartridge in the highest Column/Tier cartridge position is filled with data and sent back to its home position. This mode allows endless backup operations without user interaction.
  
  - **Autoload** - Sequential mode with autoload mode ON loads the first available cartridge (the lowest Column/Tier cartridge position that contains a cartridge) automatically if the library powers ON, or resets, with an empty drive. If the library powers ON with a cartridge already in the drive, sequential mode will start from the home position of that cartridge, unless the host issues a rewind and unload command to the drive, in which case the next cartridge in sequence will be loaded into the drive.

To start sequential mode if autoload is OFF, use the **Move Cartridge** command to load the first cartridge into the drive. The sequence starts from the home position of that cartridge. Cartridges do not need to be in contiguous slots.

To stop sequential mode, use the **Move Cartridge** command to unload the drive. This mode cancels sequential mode; the next sequential cartridge is NOT loaded.

To restart sequential mode, use the **Move Cartridge** command again to load a cartridge; the loading sequence resumes from the home position of that cartridge.
Configuring date and time settings

Figure 67. Date and time settings

Select Configuration > Configure Library > Configure Date/Time to set the date and time on your library manually after a power disruption and when daylight saving time starts and ends. The date is set in MM/DD/YYYY format, and the time is set in 24-hour HH:MM:SS format.

The current date and time is also controlled automatically with a network-based Network Time Protocol (NTP) server. For more information, see “Configuring network settings” on page 60.

Configuring network settings

Figure 68. Network settings

Select Configuration > Configure Network Settings to set the network settings for the library.
**Note:** The Internet Protocol (IPv4, IPv6, or dual IPv4/IPv6) selection is used for the TL1000 Tape Autoloader IP address, subnet mask, gateway address, time server address, mail server address, SNMP trap address, and EKM server addresses.

Configure the network with the following settings:

- **Link Speed** - Ethernet duplex mode (Auto, 10Base-T Full, 10Base-T Half, 100Base-TX Full, 100Base-TX Half).
- **DHCP** - (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) Enable DHCP to have the library server or router negotiate the connection with the library.
  - **IPv4** - Select to enable DHCP with the IPv4 protocol.
  - **IPv6** - Select to enable DHCP with the IPv6 protocol
- **IP Address** - If DHCP is disabled, set the IP address of the library manually.
  - **IPv4** - Select to enter the library IP address with the IPv4 protocol.
  - **IPv6** - Select to enter four library IP addresses with the IPv6 protocol.
- **Subnet Mask** - If DHCP is disabled, set the IP address of the subnet mask.
  - **Subnet Mask** - Select to enter the subnet mask address with the IPv4 protocol.
  - **Prefix Length** - Select to enter the prefix length for the IPv6 protocol.
- **Gateway** - If DHCP is disabled, set the IP address of the gateway.
  - **IPv4** - Select to enter the gateway IP address with the IPv4 protocol.
  - **IPv6** - Select to enter four gateway IP addresses with the IPv6 protocol.

**Configuring Operator Panel settings**

```
Configuration
  Configure Op Panel Settings
    Configure LCD Back Light
      Enable Auto Back Light
      Input Count (min)
      Disable Auto Back Light
    Change Login Password
      New Password
      Reenter Password
```

*Figure 69. Operator Panel settings*

Select **Configuration > Configure Op Panel Settings** to set the preferences when with the Operator Panel.

Configure the Operator Panel with the following settings:

- **Back light** - Select to enable the LCD back light when with the Operator Panel.
  - **Input Count** - If the auto back light is enabled, specify the time duration before the back light turns OFF. The setting uses a four-digit timer in minutes.
- **Login Password** - Select to change the Operator Panel four-character login password. The new password must be reentered for confirmation before the password is changed (default: 0000).
Configuring Web GUI Settings

Use Configuration > Configure Web GUI Settings > Unlock a User Account to unlock a User Account. The password of the user unlocked by Unlock a User Account is automatically changed to secure.

Setting the library to factory defaults

Select Configuration > Set Default to reset the library to the factory default settings. See Table 13 on page 30. The date and time must be reset after restoring factory default settings. See “Configuring date and time settings” on page 60.

Important: This configuration setting deletes all current library settings, and should be used with utmost caution.

To restore your library configuration, see “Saving and restoring configuration settings” on page 85.

Servicing the library

The Service menu on the Operator Panel gives users access to troubleshooting and maintenance diagnostic tools.

Checking the library error status

Select Service > View Error Status to check the status of the major library components.

Select the component to view its error status:

• Library - Checks the error status of the library.
• Drive - Checks the error status of the tape drive.

If an error occurs, press Enter to display specific error information. You can check the meaning of error codes in Appendix A, “Error codes,” on page 115.

Running library verify diagnostic procedures

Dell PowerVault TL1000 Tape Autoloader: User's Guide
Select Service > Diagnostics > Run Library Verify to test the library and drive hardware, communications, and the read or write capability of the library. Library Verify is the most critical and most frequently used test, and is run after all maintenance procedures to ensure correct library performance.

**Note:** If the host application hasn't already unloaded tape cartridges in the drives, run the Library Verify diagnostic test.

To run library verification diagnostic tests:

1. Select Run Library Verify, and press Enter. Follow the on-screen instructions. If there is a cartridge in the drive, the library moves the cartridge to its home position, or to the I/O station if the home position is not known.
2. When prompted, insert a scratch cartridge into the I/O station.
   
   When the scratch cartridge is loaded, an inventory is conducted and the bar code reader reads the bar code label on the cartridge and stores it for later comparison. The scratch cartridge is then moved to the tape drive, where the drive runs its own write/read/verify test. When the test is done, the library tells the drive to eject the scratch cartridge, and then the cartridge is moved back to the I/O station. The bar code is read again and compared with the value stored earlier.
3. When prompted, remove the scratch cartridge from the I/O station.
   
   The result of the test (PASSED or error message) is reported on the Operator Panel.
4. View the Error Log to check for errors.

   If an error occurs, see Appendix A, “Error codes,” on page 115 to identify and locate the problem.

**Running drive diagnostic procedures**

Select Service > Diagnostics > Drive Diagnostics to run various drive-related diagnostic tests.

To run drive diagnostic tests:

1. Select Drive Diagnostics, and press Enter. Select one of the diagnostic tests and follow the on-screen instructions.
2. When prompted, insert a scratch (blank) cartridge into the I/O station.
   - **Normal R/W Test** - Runs a shortened version of the Performance R/W Test. It does not include the POST diagnostic, calibrate drive, or unique tape motion tests. It checks the motors and head by running read/write tests on a shortened section of tape, both inbound and outbound. Takes approximately 4 minutes (if no error occurs) to 9 minutes (if calibration is required).
   - **Perform R/W Test** (Performance R/W Test) - Runs most of the tests that normally occur when the library is powered ON (POST). When prompted, load a CE scratch cartridge to run the calibrate drive, read/write, and tape motion tests. These tests calibrate the read/write channel to optimum settings, run a long read/write test with all servo positions, and exercise all of the tape motion functions of the drive. Takes up to 30 minutes.
3. When prompted, remove the cartridge from the I/O station.
   
   The result of the test (PASSED or error message) is reported on the Operator Panel.
• View the **Error Log** to check if any errors occur.
  
  If an error occurs, see [Appendix A, “Error codes,” on page 115](#) to identify and locate the problem.

### The Web User Interface

Figure 75 on page 64 shows all the menu options available from the Web User Interface for the Administrator User account. For information on the menu user access privileges for User, Superuser, and Administrator accounts, see Chapter 2, “User interfaces,” on page 13.

---

**Figure 75. Web User Interface menu**
Monitoring the library

The system summary

Select **Monitor System > System Summary** to display a summary of the status of the tape drive and the library, and the current configuration of the library, comprising:

- Library name
- Library status (OK, Degraded, or Failed). It displays Not Ready while initializing.
- Drive status (OK, Degraded, or Failed). It displays Empty, Loading, or Ejected when the drive is empty, loading media, or media is ejected or unloaded in the drive. It displays Cleaning when the cleaning cartridge is in the drive, and Initializing while initializing.
- Magazine status (Open/Closed, when Magazine is enabled)
- Operator Panel LED indicators
- Number of cartridges and slot configuration
  - Cartridge in the drive (0 or 1); Slots value is always “N/A”
  - Number of cartridges in the active slots; Number of active slots
  - Number of cartridges in the cleaning/inactive slots; Number of cleaning/inactive slots
  - Number of cartridges in the I/O Station (0 or 1) when enabled; Number of I/O Station slots
  - Number of cartridges in the reserved slot; Number of reserved slots
- Library firmware version
- Library serial number
- Drive firmware version

*Figure 76. System Summary screen*
• Service Tag number

The library map

![Library Map](image)

**Figure 77. Library Map screen**

Select **Monitor System > Library Map** to display a graphical view of the library. Each component of the library is represented by a clickable icon. Select a component in the library map to display detailed information for that component of the library on the right side of the page. A grayed-out column represents the I/O station. The information that is displayed varies according to the type of device selected:

- **Unit Status**
  - Library status (OK, Degraded, or Failed)
  - Accessor status (OK, Degraded, or Failed)
  - Drive Status (OK, Degraded, or Failed). Drive Status displays Empty, Loading, or Ejected when the drive is empty, loading media, or media is ejected/unloaded in the drive. It displays Cleaning when the cleaning cartridge is in the drive, and Initializing while initializing.
  - Magazine status (Closed, Inserted, or Open)
- **Library Settings**
  - I/O station (Enabled or Disabled)
  - Auto cleaning (Enabled or Disabled)
  - Library mode (Random or Sequential). In Sequential mode, Loop and Auto load mode are also displayed.
  - Bar code label length
- **Ethernet information**
  - Status (OK)
  - Link speed (Auto)
  - MAC address
  - Library WWNN (worldwide node name)
- **TCP/IP Settings**
  - Protocol (IPv4 Only)
  - SSL for web (Enable or Disable)
• IPv4 Settings
  – IPv4 address
  – Subnet mask
  – Gateway address
  – DHCPv4 (Enabled or Disabled)
• Column n, Tier n Information
  – Slot type (Storage, I/O station, or Cleaning)
  – Element address
• Drive Information
  – Status (OK, Degraded, or Failed). Drive Status displays Empty, Loading, or Ejected when the drive is empty, loading media, or media is ejected/unloaded in the drive. It displays Cleaning when the cleaning cartridge is in the drive, and Initializing while initializing.
  – Vendor ID
  – Product ID
  – Serial number
  – F/W version (firmware)
  – World Wide ID (node name)
  – Encryption method (None)
• Cartridge Information
  – Media status (OK, Degraded, or Failed)
  – Cartridge label that is detected by the bar code reader
  – Encryption setting for data cartridges (Not encrypted, Encrypted or Unknown)
  – Remain - Number of uses left for cleaning cartridges. When a cleaning cartridge is added to the library (I/O station or cleaning slot) the remaining uses is displayed as 50. The actual remaining uses are updated when the cleaning cartridge is loaded into the tape drive. See “Cleaning cartridge” on page 95.
  – Write protect (Yes or No)

  **Note:** Write protect status is only detected and displayed when a cartridge is in a drive.
• Accessor Information
  – Status (OK, Degraded, or Failed)
Managing the library

Moving cartridges

Use **Manage Library > Move Cartridges** to move data and cleaning cartridges between the I/O station, storage positions, inactive slots, and tape drive. Move cartridges using either of two methods:

- Click and drag a cartridge from one location to another.
- Click a cartridge, select location coordinates from the **Destination slot** menu, and click **Move**.

Clicking and dragging a cartridge from one location to another, or by clicking a cartridge and selecting a cartridge coordinate from the Destination slot menu, and clicking Move.

Select a cartridge to display information for that cartridge in the **Source** pane on the right side of the page. Drag the cartridge to a valid destination location to display information in the **Destination** pane. Release the mouse button to run the move.

The following information is displayed:

- **Source**
  - Drive or location coordinates (Column, Tier) in the library ([Cn,Tn] : Cartridge Label)
  - Column n, Tier n Information
    - Element address
    - Slot type (Storage, I/O station, or Cleaning / Inactive)
  - Drive Information
    - Status (Ok or Empty)
  - Cartridge Information
    - Media status (OK, Degraded, or Failed)
    - Cartridge label
    - Encryption capability for storage cartridges (Unknown, Encrypted, or Not encrypted)
    - Write protect (Yes or No)

**Note:** Write protect status is only detected and displayed when a cartridge is in a drive.

![Move Cartridges screen](image-url)
- Remaining uses for cleaning cartridges. When a cleaning cartridge is added to the library (I/O
station or cleaning slot) the remaining uses are displayed as 50. The actual remaining uses are
updated when the cleaning cartridge is loaded into the tape drive. See “Cleaning cartridge” on page
95.

• Destination
  – Drive or Location coordinates (Column, Tier) in the library ([Cn, Tn])
  – Column n, Tier n Information
    - Element address
    - Slot type (Storage, I/O station, or Cleaning / Inactive)

Note: Each column has a spring loaded mechanism that pushes the cartridges into Tier 1. Moving a
second cartridge into a column moves the first cartridge into Tier 2. Cartridges cannot be moved directly
from Tier 1 in one column to Tier 2 in another column in a single move operation (intermediate move
operations are required).

Note: Cartridges cannot be moved to the accessor with this command. However, cartridges can be moved
from the accessor with this command if the library was powered OFF with a cartridge still held in the
accessor.

Unloading the drive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unload Drive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Drive state:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unload</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 79. Unload Drive screen

Select Manage Library > Unload Drive. Review the Drive state (Cartridge label or Empty) and click
Unload to unload the tape cartridge from the tape drive head.

Unload when library is in Random mode: The cartridge in the drive is unloaded from the tape head
mechanism, but is still retained inside the tape drive housing. The Move Cartridges command moves the
cartridge from the drive to another location (see “Moving cartridges” on page 68). Moving a tape cartridge
from a drive to another location both unloads and moves the cartridge in a single action.

Unload when library is in Sequential mode: The cartridge in the drive is unloaded from the tape head
mechanism, and returned to the cartridge home position

Cleaning the drive manually

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clean Drive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use cartridge: [C5,T1] : CLN517L1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clean</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 80. Clean Drive screen

Select Manage Library > Clean Drive to clean a drive manually.

1. Ensure that the drive is empty. (See “Moving cartridges” on page 68 to move a cartridge from the
drive.)
2. Select a cleaning cartridge to use (from the magazine or from the I/O station)
3. Click Clean.

The cleaning cartridge is returned to its home position when the drive cleaning is finished.
Taking the library online and offline

![Library State screen](image)

Select **Manage Library > Library State** to take the library online or offline. Check the library status, and click the button that is displayed to change the library status.

It is sometimes necessary to take the library offline before library servicing functions are completed. Once these operations are finished, it is necessary to bring the library back online.

**Note:** The tape drive is always online, even when the library is offline.

Conducting a library inventory

![Inventory screen](image)

Select **Manage Library > Inventory** to force the library to run an inventory of the cartridge magazine, accessor, and tape drive to refresh the library map. Conduct an inventory by clicking the **Start** button. The Inventory Progress bar indicates the process in action. Wait until the operation finishes before normal library operations resume.

![Inventory progress bar](image)

An inventory is conducted automatically when the power is first turned ON or when a cartridge magazine is inserted.

Unlocking the cartridge magazine

![Unlock magazine](image)

Select **Manage Library > Unlock Magazine** to unlock and remove the cartridge magazine. When the cartridge magazine is unlocked, it can be removed from the library to insert or remove data and cleaning cartridges. When the cartridge magazine is fully inserted, the magazine locks into place. After the magazine is closed, wait for the library to complete its inventory before normal library operations resume.

**Note:** A blue release gate in the upper left corner of each column in the cartridge magazine prevents each cartridge from falling out of the front of the magazine. When manually releasing the gate with one hand, position your other hand in front of the column opening to protect cartridges that are ejected by the internal column spring.

**Note:** If the cartridge magazine is not removed within 5 minutes, it is automatically locked.
Configuring the library

Managing user access

![User Access screen](image)

Select **Configure Library > User Access** to add, modify, or remove administrator, superuser, and user accounts, and to change passwords. Up to 7 users can be configured with the Web User Interface.

To add, modify, or remove users that are able to access the library with the Web User Interface:

1. In the **Configure Library** menu in the left navigation pane of the Web User Interface, click **User Access**.
2. To add, modify, or remove a user account, do the following:
   - Add a user account:
     a. Click **Add**
     
     ![Add User dialog box](image)
     
     b. Enter the **User Name** and **Password** into the dialog box and assign the user’s role. Re-enter password to **Confirm**.
     
     c. Select one of the following from the **Role** menu:
- **User** - User access permission allows users to monitor the library, but not to complete functions that affect the library.
- **Superuser** - Superuser access permission allows users to operate the physical and logical library, but not to change configuration settings.
- **Administrator** - Administrator access permission allows users to complete tape library functions and change configuration settings.
- **Service** - Service access permission allows users to complete tape library functions and change configuration settings. In addition, service access permission allows the use of diagnostic tools to help identify and resolve library and drive problems. The service account user can no longer change the passwords for other account users.

d. Click **Submit** to save the new user.

**Note:** A new user's **Password** status is set to **Expired**. A new user is presented with a **Login failure** message and given the opportunity to create a new password.

- **Modify a user account:**
  
a. Observe the **Password** status of the user:
  - **Available**: The password is available to be changed.
  - **Expired**: The maximum password age was exceeded. **The password is now invalid.**
  - **Unchangeable**: The minimum password age was not exceeded. **You cannot change the password.**
  - **Locked**: The maximum number of failed login attempts for the account was exceeded.

  **Note:** An administrator must unlock the account by modifying the account and entering a new password. The **Password** status changes to **Expired**.

b. Click **Modify** next to the User Name of the account.

c. Enter and confirm a new password (see “Configuring Password Rules Settings” on page 44).

d. Select one of the following from the **Role** menu:
  - **User** - User access permission allows users to monitor the library, but not to complete functions that affect the library.
  - **Superuser** - Superuser access permission allows users to operate the physical and logical library, but not to change configuration settings.
  - **Administrator** - Administrator access permission allows users to complete tape library functions and change configuration settings.
  - **Service** - Service access permission allows users to complete tape library functions and change configuration settings. In addition, service access permission allows the use of diagnostic tools to help identify and resolve library and drive problems.

e. Click **Submit** to save the modified user account.

- **Remove a user account**
  
a. Click **Remove** next to a **User Name** to delete the account from the system.
Enter all user IDs and passwords on the Library Configuration form in Appendix D, “Library Configuration Form,” on page 149.

Click **Submit** to transfer the settings to the library. A dialog message is displayed when the settings are updated successfully.

### Configuring Password Rules Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Password Rules</strong></th>
<th><strong>Current rules:</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Minimum number of characters:</strong></td>
<td>8 ▼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Minimum number of upper case alphabetic characters (A-Z):</strong></td>
<td>0 ▼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Minimum number of lower case alphabetic characters (a-z):</strong></td>
<td>1 ▼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Minimum number of numeric characters (0-9):</strong></td>
<td>1 ▼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**Minimum number of special characters (!@#$%^&amp;*()_+={}</td>
<td>[]&quot;:;'&lt;&gt;,./):**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maximum number of identical consecutive characters:</strong></td>
<td>2 ▼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maximum number of failed logins before password is locked:</strong></td>
<td>5 ▼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maximum number of days before password must be changed:</strong></td>
<td>90 ▼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Minimum number of days before password can be changed:</strong></td>
<td>1 ▼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Number of password changes before an old password can be used again:</strong></td>
<td>8 ▼</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 88. Password Rules screen**

The **Password Rules** tab displays the rules for user passwords.

- **Minimum number of characters** - Choose the minimum password length. The factory default value is 8. The maximum password length is 16.
- **Minimum number of upper case alphabetic characters (A-Z)** - Choose the minimum number of uppercase alphabetic characters. The factory default value is 1.
- **Minimum number of lower case alphabetic characters (a-z)** - Choose the minimum number of lowercase alphabetic characters. The factory default value is 1.
- **Minimum number of numeric characters (0-9)** - Choose the minimum number of numeric characters. The factory default value is 1.
- **Minimum number of special characters (!@#$%^&*()_+={}|\[\]":;'<>,./)** - Choose the minimum number of special characters. The factory default value is 0.
- **Maximum number of identical consecutive characters** - Choose the maximum number of identical consecutive characters. The factory default value is 2. There is no limitation if 0 is selected.
- **Maximum number of failed logins before password is locked** - Choose the maximum number of failed logins before the password is locked. The factory default value is 5. Possible range for this configuration option is 0 - 10. There is no limitation if 0 is selected.
- **Maximum number of days before password must be changed** - Choose the maximum number of days before the password must be changed. There is no limitation if 0 is selected.
- **Minimum number of days before password can be changed** - Choose the minimum number of days before the password can be changed. A password can be changed immediately if 0 is selected.
- **Number of password changes before an old password can be used again** - Choose the number of password changes that are required before a password can be used again. A password can be reused immediately if 0 is selected.

Click **Submit** to save all the information.
Configuring physical and logical library settings

Physical library settings

Select **Configure Library > Physical/Logical** to configure the physical library settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Physical / Logical</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Physical Settings</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Logical Settings</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 89. Physical library settings screen

The **Physical Settings** box contains settings for the library name, cleaning cartridge, and the cartridge label bar code. Do the following:

- **Library name** - Use to enter a name for your library.
- **Auto cleaning** - Use to enable automatic cleaning of the tape drive. Auto cleaning can be enabled only when there the number of active slots is less than the total number of available slots in the library. Use the **Logical Settings** box to set the number of active slots.
- **Bar code label length** - Use to choose the number of characters in the cartridge bar code that is reported to the host computer.

Click **Submit** to transfer the settings to the library. A dialog message is displayed when the settings are updated successfully.

Logical library settings

Select **Configure Library > Physical/Logical** to configure the logical library settings.

The **Logical Settings** box contains settings for the library access mode and the number of active cartridge slots. Do the following:

- **Library mode** - The library mode can be set to Random or Sequential.
  - **Random** - In random mode, the library allows the server's (host's) application software to select any data cartridge in any order.
  - **Sequential** - In sequential mode, the library's firmware predefines the selection of the cartridges. After initialization, the firmware causes the library to select the first available cartridge found (counting from the lowest Column/Tier position through the highest cartridge position in your library) for loading into the drive. See “Location coordinates and element addresses” on page 9.
- **Loop** - Sequential mode with loop mode **Enabled** loads the cartridge in the lowest Column/Tier cartridge position after the cartridge in the highest Column/Tier cartridge position is filled with data and sent back to its home position. This mode allows endless backup operations without user interaction.
**Autoload** - Sequential mode with auto load mode **Enabled** loads the first available cartridge (the lowest Column/Tier cartridge position that contains a cartridge) automatically if the library powers ON, or resets, with an empty drive. If the library powers ON with a cartridge already in the drive, sequential mode will start from the home position of that cartridge, unless the host issues a rewind and unload command to the drive, in which case the next cartridge in sequence will be loaded into the drive.

To start sequential mode if autoload is OFF, select the **Move Cartridges** command to load the first cartridge into the drive. The sequence starts from the home position of that cartridge. Cartridges need not to be in contiguous slots.

To stop sequential mode, select the **Move Cartridges** command to unload the drive. This mode cancels sequential mode; the next sequential cartridge is NOT loaded.

To restart sequential mode, select the **Move Cartridges** command again to load a cartridge; the loading sequence resumes from the home position of that cartridge.

- **Number of active slots** - Select the number of active slots you would like to assign in your library. Selecting the number of active slots defines the number of storage slots, number of cleaning/inactive slots, whether the I/O station is enabled/disabled, and whether auto cleaning is allowed.

  The first digit configures the number of active storage positions (4, 6, 8, or 9). The second digit configures Column 5, Tier 1 of the magazine as an I/O Station (0 when disabled, and 1 when enabled).

  The Auto Cleaning function can be enabled only if there is at least one inactive position in the magazine. If auto cleaning is enabled, the inactive positions become cleaning cartridge positions.

Click **Submit** to transfer the settings to the library. A dialog message is displayed when the settings are updated successfully.
Configuring network settings

Use **Configure Library > Network** to set the network settings for the library.

**Note:** The Internet Protocol (IPv4, IPv6, or dual IPv4/IPv6) selection is used for the TL1000 Tape Autoloader IP address, subnet mask, gateway address, time server address, mail server address, SNMP trap address, and EKM server addresses.

Configure the network with the following settings:

- **Ethernet** - Select link speed duplex mode (Auto, 10Base-T Full, 10Base-T Half, 100Base-TX Full, 100Base-TX Half).
- **Security** - Select **Enable SSL for Web** to provide secure communications between the web browser and the tape library.
- **TCP/IP settings** - IPv4, IPv6, and dual stack IPv4/IPv6 are supported. To enable the dual IPv4/IPv6 protocol, select both **Use IPv4** and **Use IPv6** and enter parameters for both.
- **IPv4 Settings** - Select **Use IPv4** to enable the IPv4 Internet Protocol. Select the corresponding option to obtain an IP address automatically (DHCP) or use static IP address settings. When with DHCP, use the Operator Panel to determine the library IP address. See “Current information” on page 54. Enter the following parameters if you are using static IP address settings.
  - **IPv4 address** - Sets the TCP/IP address of the library on the network.
  - **Subnet mask** - Defines and limits users within a local network.
– **Gateway** - Allows access outside the local network.

- **IPv6 Settings** - Select **Use IPv6** to enable the IPv6 Internet Protocol. Select the corresponding check box to obtain an IP address with stateless auto configuration. Select the corresponding option to obtain an IP address automatically (DHCP) or to use a static IP address. Enter the following parameters if you are using static IP address settings:
  - **IPv6 address** - Sets the TCP/IPv6 address of the library on the network.
  - **Prefix Length** - Decimal value 0 - 128 indicating the number of contiguous, high-order bits comprising the network portion of the address.
  - **Gateway** - Allows access outside the local network.

- **DNS setting** - Select **Use DNS** to use a domain name server. The DNS server, if entered, allows the encryption, date and time, and notifications IP addresses to be specified with host names instead of numerical IP addresses.
  - **DNS IP address** - Sets the IP address of the DNS server.

Click **Submit** to transfer the settings to the library. A message is displayed when the settings are updated successfully.

**Configuring encryption settings for a non-encrypted-licensed library**

![Encryption settings screen for a non-encrypted-licensed library](image)

Select **Configure Library > Encryption** to configure an encryption method for data that is stored on tape cartridges.

**Note:** Application Managed Encryption (AME) does not require a key.
To modify the encryption settings:

1. In the **Configure Library** menu in the left navigation pane of the Web User Interface, click **Encryption**
2. In the **Encryption method:** drop-down menu, choose **Application Managed** or **Library Managed** to enable encryption in your library. No further configuration steps are necessary.
3. Click **Submit** to enable the settings.

To determine whether a cartridge is encrypted, use **Configure Library > Library Map** and select the cartridge. The screen displays whether the cartridge is encrypted, not encrypted, or unknown.

Click **Submit** to transfer the settings to the library. A dialog message is displayed when the settings are updated successfully.

### Configuring date and time settings

**Date and Time**

- **Enable NTP Server**
- **NTP server address:** 128.138.140.44
- **Time zone (UTC):** -7:0
- **Date (MM/DD/YYYY):** 04/20/2019
- **Time (HH:MM:SS):** 16:02:58

Click **Submit** to apply the settings.
Configure the date and time settings with one of three methods: automatically with a remote NTP time server on the network, automatically with the clock on your host computer, or manually.

**Note:** If you manually set your date and time, you must reset the date and time after the library is power-cycled and after a library reset.

**Note:** When the library is power-cycled, wait 10 seconds after the power is OFF before the library is powered ON again.

Once the network settings are entered on the Operator Panel, the current date and time can be modified with the Web User Interface.

The TL1000 Tape Autoloader communicates with an NTP server with the following conditions:
- Client/server basis operation
- UDP (User Datagram Protocol) to access the NTP server
- Does not use authentication keys
- Library polling is every 12 hours

To modify the date and time settings:

1. In the **Configure Library** menu in the left navigation pane of the Web User Interface, click **Date and Time**.

2. Select the **Date and Time** settings.
   - Select the **Enable NTP Server** check box to enable time and date control with a time server on the network.
     - **NTP server address** - Enter the IP address of the time server. IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported, depending on the TCP/IP settings. Host names can be entered instead of numerical IP addresses if **Use DNS** is selected in the **Network** settings.
     - **Time zone** - Enter the time zone relative to Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).
   - If the time server is disabled, enter the local time and date manually.
     - **Date** - Enter the date with the MM/DD/YYYY format.
     - **Time** - Enter the time with the HH:MM:SS format.
   - Click **Load PC date time** to synchronize the library with the clock on your host computer at regular intervals.

3. Click **Submit** to update the settings.
Configuring email notifications

**SMTP**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Send Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SMTP server address:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sender address:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Mail To**

| 01 | Enable |
| 02 | Enable |
| 03 | Enable |
| 04 | Enable |

**Mail Event**

- Error Events
- Error and Warning Events
- Error, Warning, and Information Events

**Submit**

*Figure 94. Email notifications*

**Note:** This procedure is optional.

To set up email notifications of library events:

1. In the Configure Library menu in the left navigation pane of the Web User Interface, click **SMTP**.
2. Configure the **Send server** settings.
   - **SMTP server address** - SMTP mail server address. IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported. Host names can be entered instead of numerical IP addresses if the DNS server is specified in the Network settings.
   - **Sender address** - Mail header information.
   - **Subject** - Mail header information.
3. Enter the email addresses to be notified when an event takes place in the **Mail To** fields, and click the **Enable** check boxes to select each address.
4. Select the event level to report in the **Mail Event** settings.
5. Click **Test** to send a test email message to the enabled addresses.
6. Click **Submit** to enable the settings.
Configuring trap notifications

### SNMP

#### SNMP Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Community</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Contact</th>
<th>SNMPv3 engine ID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>public</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>80 00 00 02 03 00 16 97 72 3A 3B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Trap Event

- Error Events
- Error and Warning Events
- Error, Warning, and Information Events

#### Trap List

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Validity</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Version</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Community</th>
<th>User name</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
<td>v1</td>
<td>trap</td>
<td>public</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>modify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
<td>v1</td>
<td>trap</td>
<td>public</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>modify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
<td>v1</td>
<td>trap</td>
<td>public</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>modify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
<td>v1</td>
<td>trap</td>
<td>public</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>modify</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SNMPv3 User List

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Validity</th>
<th>User name</th>
<th>Authentication</th>
<th>Privacy</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable</td>
<td>disable</td>
<td>disable</td>
<td>disable</td>
<td>modify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable</td>
<td>disable</td>
<td>disable</td>
<td>disable</td>
<td>modify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable</td>
<td>disable</td>
<td>disable</td>
<td>disable</td>
<td>modify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable</td>
<td>disable</td>
<td>disable</td>
<td>disable</td>
<td>modify</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 95. Trap notifications**

**Note:** This procedure is optional. SNMP notifications are not enabled unless you have selected the **SNMP Enabled** check box. To disable SNMP notifications, clear the **SNMP Enable** check box and click **Submit**.

The traps that are supported by the TL1000 Tape Autoloader are listed in “Trap definitions (types)” on page 131.

To set up trap notifications for an SNMP server:

1. In the **Configure Library** menu in the left navigation pane of the Web User Interface, click **SNMP**
2. Select the **SNMP Enabled** check box.
3. Configure the SNMP server and header settings.

   - **Community** - SNMP community name to which the library belongs.
   - **Name** - Unique SNMP name for the system.
   - **Location** - Physical location of the system.
   - **Contact** - Contact person’s name.
   - **SNMPv3 engine ID** - A read-only attribute that identifies the SNMPv3 engine.
4. Enter the settings of the SNMP monitoring stations to be notified when an event takes place by clicking the **modify** buttons in the **Trap List** box.

![SNMP Trap Settings](image)

**Figure 96. SNMP trap settings**

- **Validity** - Select the check box to enable and clear the check box to disable.
- **Address** - IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported. Host names can be entered instead of numerical IP addresses if the DNS server is specified.
- **Version** - Trap version v1, v2c, or v3. For v2c and v3, the **Inform** check box determines if an SNMP INFORM request is sent instead of a trap event.
- **Community** (v1 or v2c) - SNMP community name.
- **User name** (v3 only) - SNMPv3 unique user name.
- **Authentication** (v3 only) - Authentication algorithm: **disable**, **MD5**, or **SHA**.
- **Authentication Password** - When an **Authentication** algorithm is enabled, an **Authentication Password** is required. (see “Configuring Password Rules Settings” on page 44).
- **Confirm** - Re-enter the Authentication Password to confirm it.
- **Privacy** (v3 only) - Privacy service encryption and decryption algorithm: **disable**, **DES**, or **AES**. When an algorithm is specified, a privacy password is required.
- **Privacy password** - enter a password (see “Configuring Password Rules Settings” on page 44).
- **Confirm** - Re-enter the **Privacy password** to confirm it.

5. Click **Submit** to save the SNMP Trap settings. Modify each trap's settings by repeating the previous step.

6. Enter the SNMPv3 users who are allowed to access the tape library by clicking the **modify** buttons in the **SNMPv3 User List** box.
Figure 97. SNMPv3 user settings

- **Validity** - Select the check box to enable and clear the check box to disable.
- **User name** - SNMPv3 unique user name.
- **Authentication** - Authentication algorithm: disable, MD5, or SHA. When an algorithm is specified, an authentication password is required.
- **Authentication password** - enter a password (see “Configuring Password Rules Settings” on page 44).
- **Confirm** - Re-enter the **Authentication password** to confirm it.
- **Privacy** - Privacy service encryption and decryption algorithm: disable, DES, or AES. When a privacy algorithm is specified, a privacy password is required.
- **Privacy password** - enter a password (see “Configuring Password Rules Settings” on page 44).
- **Confirm** - Re-enter the **Privacy password** to confirm it.

7. Select the event level to report in the **Trap Event** box.
8. Click **Test** to send a test trap notification to the enabled IP addresses.
9. Click **Submit** to enable the settings.

**Uploading and configuring the SSL certificate**
Figure 98. Certificate screen

This library takes in certificate content and key content in two separate .pem files. The library requires a browser restart or library power reset for a certificate change or update.

1. Use Configure Library > Certificate to upload a SSL certificate.
2. In the Import box, click the Browse... buttons to navigate to the Certificate and Private Key files to be imported.
3. When the Certificate and Private Key files are selected, click Import in the Import box.
4. Click Ok in the message box to start the certificate import.
5. When the import completes, an Import was successful message appears. Click OK.

Where the current SSL session uses the previous certificate as-is, the new SSL session uses the imported Certificate. Log off, close and restart the browser, and log back in, using the new imported Certificate.

6. The information for the imported Certificate is shown.

Figure 99. New certificate

7. To remove a Certificate and Private Key, click Remove in the Remove box.
**Note:** When a user-provided certificate and private key are removed, the system defaults to the self-signed certificate and private key that shipped with the machine.

**Note:** The imported SSL Certificate/Private Key is not saved during the Save/Restore function on the Autoloader. If the Dell PowerVault TL1000 Autoloader is replaced, the SSL Certificate and the Private Key must be imported again, if needed.

**Saving and restoring configuration settings**

Your library configuration can be saved and restored automatically by a cookie and manually by with the Web User Interface. It is recommended that you use the Web User Interface method whether you use the cookie method.

**Important:** Verify all configuration settings after your library configuration is restored. Reset the library date and time (see “Configuring date and time settings” on page 78).

**Saving and restoring configuration automatically with cookies**

If allowed by your web browser preference settings, cookies are employed to automatically save your library configuration on your host computer and automatically restore your library configuration if your library network configuration uses a static IP address. The following flowchart illustrates how VPD data is saved from and restored to a library with cookies.

![Flowchart](figure100.png)

Figure 100. Save/Restore configuration with cookies

**Saving and restoring configuration manually with Web User Interface**
**Figure 101. Save configuration**

**Note:** This procedure is recommended.

Each time that you change the configuration of your library, save the configuration. This function also maintains several library configuration profiles that can be restored to the library when wanted with the Web User Interface.

To save a library configuration:

1. In the Configure Library menu in the left navigation pane of the Web User Interface, click **Save/Restore**
2. In the Save Library Settings box, click **Save** to create a configuration file of your library on your computer.

To restore a library configuration:

1. Click **Browse** to navigate to and select your saved configuration file.
2. Click **Restore** to load the settings from a file.
Servicing the library

Library logs

Select **Service Library > View Library Logs** to display a log history summary of errors that occurred.

The error log is displayed with sense data information. The summary can be filtered to display errors with specific sense data code types.

Click **Refresh** to read the log of errors from the tape library.

Click **detail** in the index of error messages to see more information about the error.

The information that is displayed for the error comprises:

- **Index**
  - Index number in the error listing.

- **Date Time**
  - Timestamp of the error

- **Check Code**
  - Library error code. Information about errors and actions to resolve the problem is listed in Appendix A, “Error codes,” on page 115

- **Sense Key**
  - Sense data is generated by a drive when it encounters errors. Information about sense keys is listed in “Sense Key definitions” on page 139

- **ASC/ASCQ**
  - Additional Sense Code/Additional Sense Code Qualifiers. Information about ASC/ASCQ is listed in “Library sense data” on page 139

Figure 102. View Library Logs screen

Select **Service Library > View Library Logs** to display a log history summary of errors that occurred.

The error log is displayed with sense data information. The summary can be filtered to display errors with specific sense data code types.

Click **Refresh** to read the log of errors from the tape library.

Click **detail** in the index of error messages to see more information about the error.

The information that is displayed for the error comprises:

- **Index**
  - Index number in the error listing.

- **Date Time**
  - Timestamp of the error

- **Check Code**
  - Library error code. Information about errors and actions to resolve the problem is listed in Appendix A, “Error codes,” on page 115

- **Sense Key**
  - Sense data is generated by a drive when it encounters errors. Information about sense keys is listed in “Sense Key definitions” on page 139

- **ASC/ASCQ**
  - Additional Sense Code/Additional Sense Code Qualifiers. Information about ASC/ASCQ is listed in “Library sense data” on page 139

Chapter 4. Operations 87
Description
Description of the error

detail
Link to more details about the error

Downloading logs
Tape library logs and drive logs may be used by support personnel to help troubleshoot problems.

Select Service Library > Download Logs to download the library log or to download the tape drive memory dump.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Download Library Log</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Download</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Download Drive Log</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Download</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 103. Download Logs screen

To download the library logs:
1. Click Download in the Download Library Log box to download the library logs and save to a file.
2. After confirming, the library goes offline and the download begins.
3. Click Save File in the dialog box and save the file.

To download the drive logs:
1. Click Download in the Download Drive Log box, to download the drive logs and save to a file.
2. After confirming, the library goes offline and the download begins.
3. Click Save File in the dialog box and save the file.

The resulting zip file contains the Force Memory Dump Data (ForceDriveLog.dmp) and the Normal Memory Dump Data (NormalDriveLog.dmp).

Resetting the library and drives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reset Library / Drive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Select Reset Device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target device: Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Execute Reset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Device Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Library: OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive: Empty</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 104. Reset library and drive screen

Select Service Library > Reset Library/Drive to reset the library or the tape drive.

Select the Target device and click Execute Reset. Click OK to confirm. The library and tape drive status is displayed. The Device Status may display Failed until the device is back online. The Device Status displays a green checkmark when the device is reset. The reset operation is fully completed when the drive or tape library is taken online.
Updating library and drive firmware

Figure 105. Firmware Update screen

Select **Service Library > Firmware Update** to update the library and drive firmware.

**Note:** It is the customer's responsibility to maintain the library and drive firmware at the most recent level.

Consider these recommendations to provide maximum performance and reliability:

- The latest version of microcode must be installed on your tape libraries and devices.
- The library code must be updated first, unless noted otherwise. This action supports any changes that are introduced in the library code for that drive, or any changes made to the drive for that release.
- These firmware updates are intended to increase overall reliability, improve tape handling, reduce the possibility of data errors, and enhance diagnostic capabilities.

To determine the **Current drive** and **Current version**, see the settings in the **Drive Firmware Update** box.

**Note:** The current drive and current version can also be found by navigating to **Monitor System > Library Map**. Select the **Drive** component in the library map to display the **Drive Information** box. The **Product ID** is the drive that is installed in the library.

**Note:** Ensure that you download and install the correct drive firmware.

- Firmware for the ULT3580-HH4 drive is not compatible with the ULT3580-HH4 V2 drive.
- Firmware for the ULT3580-HH4 V2 drive is not compatible with the ULT3580-HH4 drive.

To update library and drive firmware:

1. Unload the tape drive, if there is a cartridge in the tape drive, before the library and drive firmware are updated.

2. Use **Service Library > Firmware Update** and click **Browse** to locate the library firmware file with extension ".fmg" (for example, TL1000_31.3000.fmg) or the LTO SAS drive firmware file with extension ".ro" (for example, 85F0L3AH.ro) that you downloaded from the Dell web site, then click **Update**. The Web User Interface indicates that the operation is complete. This means that the firmware file is successfully moved from the host computer to the library.

3. Wait for the library to reboot before normal library operations resume. It can take several minutes before the library reboots.

4. Verify the firmware update by viewing the **System Summary** on the Web User Interface.

**Important:** After the update process starts, you must wait until the library reboots. Do not attempt to interrupt the process in any way, or the upgrade will not be successful.
Usage statistics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Usage Statistics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Last update: 05/22/2018 16:04:34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Motion Counts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Move</th>
<th>42,645</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accessor</td>
<td>99,855</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Picker</td>
<td>85,290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X Move</td>
<td>85,290</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Retry Counts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drive</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C1,T2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C1,T1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C2,T2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C2,T1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C3,T2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C3,T1</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C4,T2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C4,T1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C5,T1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Error Counts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Picker motion</th>
<th>10</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X Move motion</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive loading</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive unloading</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 106. Usage Statistics screen

Select Service Library > Usage Statistics to view statistics information about the movement of the robotics of the library.

The Last update shows the time of the most recent library data refresh.

**Motion counts**

Lists the accumulated operation count for all movements, accessor movements, picker movements, and X-axis movements.

**Retry counts**

Lists the accumulated number of retries (reattempts to load cartridges) in the drive and the cartridges positions by the accessor.

**Error counts**

Lists the accumulated number of errors for the accessor, X-axis movements, and drive load and unload operations.
“Data cartridges” on page 91

“Write once, read many (WORM) cartridges” on page 94

“Cleaning cartridge” on page 95

“Bar code labels” on page 95

“Write-Protect switch” on page 97

“Cartridge care and handling” on page 97

“Environmental and shipping specifications for tape cartridges” on page 100

To ensure that your Ultrium Tape Drive conforms to Dell’s specifications for reliability, use only LTO Ultrium tape cartridges. You might use other LTO-certified data cartridges, but they might not meet the standards of reliability that are established by Dell. The LTO Ultrium Data Cartridge cannot be interchanged with the media used in other non-LTO Ultrium tape products.

Figure 107 on page 91 shows the LTO Ultrium Data Cartridge and its components.

1. LTO cartridge memory
2. Cartridge door
3. Leader Pin
4. Write-protect Switch
5. Label area
6. Insertion guide

Figure 107. The LTO Ultrium Data Cartridge

**Note:** The same components are on all the LTO Ultrium Data Cartridges.

**Data cartridges**

The different generations of Ultrium data cartridges can be identified by color:
Table 14. Cartridge types and colors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Color</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 8</td>
<td>Burgundy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 8 WORM</td>
<td>Silvery gray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium M8</td>
<td>Purple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 7</td>
<td>Purple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 7 WORM</td>
<td>Purple and Silvery gray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 6</td>
<td>Black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 6 WORM</td>
<td>Black and Silvery gray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 5</td>
<td>Burgundy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 5 WORM</td>
<td>Burgundy and Silvery gray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 4</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 4 WORM</td>
<td>Green and Silvery gray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 3</td>
<td>Slate Blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 3 WORM</td>
<td>Slate Blue and Silvery gray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 2</td>
<td>Purple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 1</td>
<td>Black</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All generations contain 1/2-inch, dual-coat, magnetic tape.

You can order tape cartridges with the bar code labels included, or you can order custom labels.

When tape is processed in the cartridges, Ultrium Tape Drives use a linear, serpentine recording format. For the native data capacity and recording format for Ultrium data cartridges, see Table 2 on page 2.

The first set of tracks is written from near the beginning of the tape almost to the end of the tape. The head then repositions to the next set of tracks for the return pass. This process continues until all tracks are written and the cartridge is full, or until all data is written.

The cartridge door (2 in Figure 107 on page 91) protects the tape from contamination when the cartridge is out of the drive. The tape is attached to a leader pin (3 in Figure 107 on page 91) behind the door. When the cartridge is inserted into the drive, a threading mechanism pulls the pin (and tape) out of the cartridge, across the drive head, and onto a non-removable take-up reel. The head can then read or write data from or to the tape.

The write-protect switch (4 in Figure 107 on page 91) prevents data from being written to the tape cartridge. For more information, see “Write-Protect switch” on page 97.

The label area (5 in Figure 107 on page 91) provides a location to place a label.

The insertion guide (6 in Figure 107 on page 91) is a large, notched area that prevents the cartridge from being inserted incorrectly.

Table 15. Nominal cartridge life: Load/unload cycles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Load/Unload Cycles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 8</td>
<td>20,000 (20k)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium M8</td>
<td>20,000 (20k)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 7</td>
<td>20,000 (20k)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 15. Nominal cartridge life: Load/unload cycles (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Load/Unload Cycles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 6</td>
<td>20,000 (20k)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 5</td>
<td>20,000 (20k)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 4</td>
<td>20,000 (20k)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 3</td>
<td>20,000 (20k)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 2</td>
<td>10,000 (10k)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 1</td>
<td>5000 (5k)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Cartridge compatibility**

For information on Ultrium data cartridge compatibility with Ultrium tape drives, see Table 5 on page 8.

**LTO type M cartridge (M8)**

The LTO Program introduced a new capability with LTO8 tape drives: the ability to write 9 TB (native) on a brand new LTO Ultrium 7 cartridge instead of 6 TB (native) as specified by the LTO7 format. Such a cartridge is called an LTO7 initialized LTO Type M cartridge. These LTO Type M cartridges are identifiable by using an automation bar code label that ends with the last 2 characters “M8”.

Table 16. LTO7 and LTO8 Cartridge Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cartridge/Density type</th>
<th>Bar code label</th>
<th>Cartridge Packaging/ Silkscreen labeling</th>
<th>Native capacity</th>
<th>Tape Drive compatibility</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L8</td>
<td>xxxxxxL8</td>
<td>LTO Ultrium 8</td>
<td>12 TB</td>
<td>LTO8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M8</td>
<td>xxxxxxM8</td>
<td>LTO Ultrium 7</td>
<td>9 TB</td>
<td>LTO8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L7</td>
<td>xxxxxxL7</td>
<td>LTO Ultrium 7</td>
<td>6 TB</td>
<td>LTO7, LTO8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

From now on, these cartridges are referred to as L8, M8, and L7.

Only new, unused LTO Ultrium 7 cartridges can be initialized as M8 cartridges. When a cartridge is initialized as M8, it cannot be changed back to L7. Initialized M8 cartridges can be written and read only in an LTO8 tape drive. LTO7 tape drives cannot read initialized M8 cartridges.

M8 cartridges can be purchased as either pre-initialized (also referred to as “labeled and initialized”) M8 data cartridges or uninitialized M8 data cartridges (M8 WORM cartridges are not supported). For either option, the bar code label is included. However, the uninitialized M8 data cartridge must first be initialized in tape libraries that support the automatic initialization of uninitialized M8 cartridges while under the control of ISV applications that recognize the “M8” bar code label.

A tape cartridge is initialized when it is first loaded into a compatible tape drive and data is written by the ISV application at the beginning of tape (sometimes referred to as “labeling a tape” or “writing from BOT”). The tape drive then establishes the density of the media.

If an uninitialized M8 cartridge is not initialized in a tape library that supports uninitialized M8 cartridges, then the cartridge might inadvertently and silently be initialized at the L7 density (that is, at a 6 TB native capacity) even if the bar code label states “M8”. This action might occur with the usage of non-TL1000 Tape Autoloaders, stand-alone LTO7 tape drives, stand-alone LTO8 tape drives, earlier LTO8 tape drive firmware, earlier TL1000 Tape Autoloader firmware, or earlier ISV software that does not recognize that M8 cartridges must be mounted only in LTO8 tape drives. M8 cartridges that are inadvertently initialized
at the L7 density can continue to be read and written in LTO7 and LTO8 tape drives. However, they remain limited to the 6 TB native capacity.

TL1000 Tape Autoloader firmware version 0080 added support for uninitialized M8 cartridges, in addition to support for pre-initialized M8 cartridges. In any tape product with M8 cartridges, the minimum LTO8 tape drive firmware version is HB82.

### Write once, read many (WORM) cartridges

Certain Records retention and data security applications require a write once, read many (WORM) method for storing data on tape. The LTO Ultrium 4 and later drives enable WORM support when a WORM tape cartridge is loaded into the drive.

#### WORM media

Because standard read/write media are incompatible with the WORM feature, a specially formatted WORM tape cartridge (see Figure 108 on page 94) is required. Each WORM cartridge has a unique, worldwide cartridge identifier (WWCID), which consists of the unique CM chip serial number and the unique tape media serial number.

#### Data security on WORM media

Certain built-in security measures help ensure that the data that is written on a WORM cartridge does not become compromised, for example:

- The format of an Ultrium 4 and later WORM tape cartridge is unlike standard read/write media. This unique format prevents a drive that lacks WORM-capable firmware from writing on a WORM tape cartridge. For LTO 8, native data capacity is 12 TB and compressed data capacity is 30 TB.
- When the drive senses a WORM cartridge, the firmware prohibits user data from being changed or altered. The firmware tracks the last point on the tape that can be appended.

#### WORM media errors

The following conditions cause WORM media errors to occur:

- Information in the servo manufacturer's word (SMW) on the tape must match information from the cartridge memory (CM) module in the cartridge. If it does not match, a media error code 7 posts on the drive’s single-character display (SCD).
- Inserting a WORM tape cartridge into a drive that is not compatible with WORM causes the cartridge to be treated as an unsupported medium. The drive reports a media error code 7. Upgrading the drive firmware to the correct code level resolves the problem.

#### Requirements for WORM capability

To use the WORM capability of your LTO Ultrium drive, you must use a compatible WORM tape cartridge. See “Cartridge compatibility” on page 93 for cartridge and VOLSER compatibility.
Cleaning cartridge

An Ultrium Universal Cleaning Cartridge is required to clean the tape drive. The drive itself determines when it must be cleaned and notifies the library. When notified, the library indicates that the drive needs cleaning by turning ON the “Clean Drive” LED on the front panel of the library and posting a message on the library display.

A tape drive within a library requires the use of a library menu function to either automatically or manually clean the tape drive. See Chapter 4, “Operations,” on page 52.

**Important:** The drive must be cleaned only when it is requested by the drive.

The Ultrium Universal Cleaning Cartridge is valid for 50 uses. The cartridge's LTO-CM (Cartridge Memory) chip tracks the number of times that the cartridge is used.

**Note:** The drive automatically ejects an expired cleaning cartridge.

Bar code labels

A bar code label contains:

- A volume serial number (VOLSER) that is human-readable.
- A bar code that the library can read.

**Note:** LTO drives do not require cartridges to have bar code labels. Specific library types or models might require cartridges to have bar code labels.

When read by a library’s bar code reader, the bar code identifies the cartridge’s VOLSER to the library. The bar code also tells the library whether the cartridge is a data cartridge or cleaning cartridge. In addition, the bar code includes the two-character media-type identifier or M8, or Lx, where x equals 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, or 8. The letter L identifies the cartridge as an LTO cartridge and the number represents the generation of cartridge for that cartridge type. Figure 109 on page 96 shows a sample bar code label for the LTO Ultrium Tape Cartridge.

Tape cartridges can be ordered with the labels included or with custom labels.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cartridges</th>
<th>VOLSER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 8 Data Cartridge</td>
<td>xxxxxxL8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 8 WORM Cartridge</td>
<td>xxxxxxLY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium M8 Data Cartridge</td>
<td>xxxxxxM8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 7 Data Cartridge</td>
<td>xxxxxxL7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 7 WORM Cartridge</td>
<td>xxxxxxLX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 6 Data Cartridge</td>
<td>xxxxxxL6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 6 WORM Cartridge</td>
<td>xxxxxxLW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 5 Data Cartridge</td>
<td>xxxxxxL5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 5 WORM Cartridge</td>
<td>xxxxxxLV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 4 Data Cartridge</td>
<td>xxxxxxL4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 4 WORM Cartridge</td>
<td>xxxxxxLU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 3 Data Cartridge</td>
<td>xxxxxxL3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 3 WORM Cartridge</td>
<td>xxxxxxLT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 17. Cartridges and VOLSERs compatible with the Ultrium Tape Drives (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cartridges</th>
<th>VOLSER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 2 Data Cartridge</td>
<td>xxxxxxL2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrium 1 Data Cartridge (READ ONLY)</td>
<td>xxxxxxL1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTO Ultrium Cleaning Cartridge</td>
<td>CLNxxxLx</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To determine the complete specifications of the bar code and the bar code label, contact your sales representative.

When a bar code label is attached to a tape cartridge, place the label only in the recessed label area (see 5 in Figure 107 on page 91). A label that extends outside of the recessed area can cause loading problems in the drive.

⚠️ Attention: Do not place any type of mark on the white space at either end of the bar code. A mark in this area might prevent the library from reading the label.

![Sample bar code label on the LTO Ultrium 8 Tape Cartridge](image)

**Figure 109. Sample bar code label on the LTO Ultrium 8 Tape Cartridge**

**Guidelines for the use of bar code labels**

Apply the following guidelines whenever using bar code labels:

- Do not reuse a label or reapply a used label over an existing label.
- Before you apply a new label, remove the old label by slowly pulling it at a right angle to the cartridge case.
- Use peel-clean labels that do not leave a residue after they are removed. If there is glue residue on the cartridge, remove it by gently rubbing it with your finger. Do not use a sharp object, water, or a chemical to clean the label area.
- Examine the label before it is applied to the cartridge. Do not use the label if it has voids or smears in the printed characters or bar code (a library’s inventory operation takes much longer if the bar code label is not readable).
- Remove the label from the label sheet carefully. Do not stretch the label or cause the edges to curl.
- Position the label within the recessed label area (see 5 in Figure 107 on page 91).
- With light finger pressure, smooth the label so that no wrinkles or bubbles exist on its surface.
- Verify that the label is smooth and parallel, and has no roll-up or roll-over. The label must be flat to within 0.5 mm (0.02 in.) over the length of the label and have no folds, missing pieces, or smudges.
- Do not place other machine-readable labels on other surfaces of the cartridge. They might interfere with the ability of the drive to load the cartridge.
Write-Protect switch

The position of the write-protect switch on the tape cartridge (see Figure 110) determines whether you can write to the tape. If the switch is set to:

- The locked position (solid red), data cannot be written to the tape.
- The unlocked position (black void), data can be written to the tape.

If possible, use your server's application software to write-protect your cartridges (rather than manually setting the write-protect switch). This application allows the server's software to identify a cartridge that no longer contains current data and is eligible to become a scratch (blank) data cartridge. Do not write-protect scratch (blank) cartridges. The tape drive cannot write new data to them.

If you must manually set the write-protect switch, slide it left or right to the desired position.

Figure 110. Setting the write-protect switch

Table 18. Location of the write-protect switch

| Write-Protect switch |

Cartridge care and handling

Attention: Do not insert a damaged tape cartridge into the drive. A damaged cartridge can interfere with the reliability of a drive and might void the warranties of the drive and the cartridge. Before inserting a tape cartridge, inspect the cartridge case, cartridge door, and write-protect switch for breaks.

Incorrect handling or an incorrect environment can damage cartridges or their magnetic tape. To avoid damage to your tape cartridges and to ensure the continued high reliability of your LTO Ultrium Tape Drives, use the following guidelines:

Provide training

- Post procedures that describe proper media handling in places where people gather.
- Ensure that anyone who handles tape has been properly trained in handling and shipping procedures. This includes operators, users, programmers, archival services, and shipping personnel.
- Ensure that any service or contract personnel who perform archiving are properly trained in media-handling procedures.
- Include media-handling procedures as part of any services contract.
• Define and make personnel aware of data recovery procedures.

Ensure proper packaging

• When shipping a cartridge, use the original or better packaging.
• Always ship or store a cartridge in a jewel case.
• Use only a recommended shipping container that securely holds the cartridge in its jewel case during transportation.
• Never ship a cartridge in a commercial shipping envelope. Always place it in a box or package.
• If you ship the cartridge in a cardboard box or a box of a sturdy material, ensure the following:
  – Place the cartridge in polyethylene plastic wrap or bags to protect it from dust, moisture, and other contaminants.
  – Pack the cartridge snugly; do not allow it to move around.
  – Double-box the cartridge (place it inside a box, then place that box inside the shipping box) and add padding between the two boxes (see Figure 111 on page 98).

![Figure 111. Double-boxing tape cartridges for shipping](image)

Provide proper acclimation and environmental conditions

• Before you use a tape cartridge, acclimate it to the operating environment for 24 hours or the time necessary to prevent condensation in the drive (the time will vary, depending on the environmental extremes to which the cartridge was exposed).
• Ensure that all surfaces of a cartridge are dry before inserting it.
• Do not expose the cartridge to moisture or direct sunlight.
• Do not expose recorded or blank cartridges to stray magnetic fields of greater than 100 oersteds (for example, terminals, motors, video equipment, X-ray equipment, or fields that exist near high-current cables or power supplies). Such exposure can cause the loss of recorded data or make the blank cartridge unusable.
• Maintain the conditions that are described in “Environmental and shipping specifications for tape cartridges” on page 100.

Perform a thorough inspection

After you purchase a cartridge and before you use it, complete the following steps:
• Inspect the cartridge's packaging to determine potential rough handling.
• When a cartridge is inspected, open only the cartridge door. Do not open any other part of the cartridge case. The upper and lower parts of the case are held together with screws. Separating them destroys the usefulness of the cartridge.
• Inspect the cartridge for damage before you use or store it.
• Inspect the rear of the cartridge (the part that loads first into the tape load compartment) and ensure that there are no gaps in the seam of the cartridge case. If there are gaps in the seam (see Figure 112 on page 99), the leader pin might be dislodged.

![Figure 112. Checking for gaps in the seams of a cartridge](image)

• Check that the leader pin is properly seated.
• If you suspect that the cartridge was mishandled but it appears usable, copy any data onto a good cartridge immediately for possible data recovery. Discard the mishandled cartridge.
• Review handling and shipping procedures.

Handle the cartridge carefully

• Do not drop the cartridge. If the cartridge drops, slide the cartridge door back and ensure that the leader pin is properly seated in the pin-retaining spring clips.
• Do not handle tape that is outside the cartridge. Handling the tape can damage the tape's surface or edges, which might interfere with read or write reliability. Pulling on tape that is outside the cartridge can damage the tape and the brake mechanism in the cartridge.
• Do not stack more than six cartridges.
• Do not degauss a cartridge that you intend to reuse. Degaussing makes the tape unusable.

Examples of cartridge problems

Example: Split Cartridge Case (see “Perform a thorough inspection” on page 98)

The cartridge's case is damaged. There is a high possibility of media damage and potential loss. Perform the following steps:

1. Look for cartridge mishandling.
2. Use the Leader Pin Reattachment Kit (part number 08L9129) to correctly seat the pin. Then, immediately use data recovery procedures to minimize chances of data loss.
3. Review media-handling procedures.

Example: Improper Placement of Leader Pin

1. Look for cartridge damage.
2. Use the Leader Pin Reattachment Kit (part number 08L9129) to correctly seat the pin. Then, immediately use data recovery procedures to minimize chances of data loss.
Environmental and shipping specifications for tape cartridges

Before you use a tape cartridge, acclimate it to the operating environment for 24 hours or the time necessary to prevent condensation in the drive (the time varies, depending on the environmental extremes to which the cartridge was exposed).

The best storage container for the cartridges (until they are opened) is the original shipping container. The plastic wrapping prevents dirt from accumulating on the cartridges and partially protects them from humidity changes.

When you ship a cartridge, place it in its jewel case or in a sealed, moisture-proof bag to protect it from moisture, contaminants, and physical damage. Ship the cartridge in a shipping container that has enough packing material to cushion the cartridge and prevent it from moving within the container.

Table 19 on page 100 gives the environment for operating, storing, and shipping LTO Ultrium Tape Cartridges.

Table 19. Environment for operating, storing, and shipping the LTO Ultrium Tape Cartridge

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environmental Factor</th>
<th>Operating</th>
<th>Operational Storage¹</th>
<th>Archival Storage²</th>
<th>Shipping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Temperature</td>
<td>10 - 45°C (50 - 113°F)</td>
<td>16 - 32°C (61 - 90°F)</td>
<td>16 - 25°C (61 - 77°F)</td>
<td>-23 to 49°C (-9 to 120°F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative humidity (non-condensing)</td>
<td>10 - 80%</td>
<td>20 - 80%</td>
<td>20 - 50%</td>
<td>5 - 80%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum wet bulb temperature</td>
<td>26°C(79°F)</td>
<td>26°C(79°F)</td>
<td>26°C(79°F)</td>
<td>26°C(79°F)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note:
1. The short term or operational storage environment is for storage durations of up to six months.
2. The long term or archival storage environment is for durations of six months up to 10 years.
Chapter 6. Troubleshooting

The TL1000 Tape Autoloader is a customer replaceable unit (CRU). The customer is responsible for the setup and maintenance of the library. Warranty replacement of the TL1000 Tape Autoloader, if required, is provided by exchanging the old unit with a new unit. The customer is charged for onsite service if a service contract is not in place.

When an error occurs during operation of the library, the library stops the current operation and displays an error code on the Operator Panel. Unless otherwise noted, try to resolve the problem by cycling power to the library and retrying the last operation.

Note: When power cycling the library, wait 10 seconds after the power is switched OFF before the library is powered ON again.

Before you place a service call or inform Dell Technical Support, observe the LEDs on the front panel and error messages on the Operator Panel to determine exactly which part is failing. See “Interpreting front panel LEDs” on page 108. If the LEDs on all components are functioning properly, see “Diagnosing a problem” on page 103.

How the library reports problems

The library uses advanced problem detection, reporting, and notification technology to alert customers of problems as soon as they occur. It completes numerous self-tests to monitor the library’s temperature, voltage and currents, and standard library operations. These tests monitor the library when the library is powered ON, and during normal operation when the library is idle.

If the test detects a problem, the library generates a message that identifies which component is likely causing the problem. The library’s Error LED and Attention LED might turn ON to indicate an abnormal state. If the problem is not severe, the Attention LED turns ON and the library continues to provide full functionality to the library. If the problem is not recoverable, the Error LED turns ON and an error message is displayed on the Operator Panel.

When the library generates an attention event or an error event, support staff can be notified immediately by setting up email event notification or SNMP trap notification. The type of event that generates email notification or SNMP trap notification can be selected to limit the number of events to a specific priority level.

Customers can frequently resolve a simple problem themselves by with the information found in “Diagnosing a problem” on page 103. If the problem is unrecoverable, the customer must contact Dell Technical Support (see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111).
Library error message content

When a library event occurs, the event is logged in to flash memory on the Library Control Board.

The library error log is viewed on the Operator Panel by selecting **Service > View Error Status**. The log lists all of the library error messages in the order in which they occurred, starting with the most recent at the top.

The Web User Interface can display a log history summary of information, warning, and error events that occurred by selecting **Service Library > Operator Interventions**. The summary can be filtered to display the operator intervention log for a specific hardware component and specific event levels. The log is stored in memory on the Library Control Board. When the memory buffer is full, new events overwrite the oldest events. The log is not cleared from memory when power is turned OFF. The information that is displayed in the **Detail** panel for the selected operator intervention event consists of:

- Index number of the event
- Date the event occurred
- Time the event occurred
- Unit in the library where the event occurred
- Event level
- Description of the event

The Web User Interface can also display a log history summary of errors that occurred by selecting **Service Library > View Library Logs**. The error log is displayed with sense data information. The summary can be filtered to display errors with specific sense data code types. The information that is displayed in the **Detail** panel for the selected error consists of:

- Index number of the error
- Date and time the error occurred
- Error code
- Description of the error
### Diagnosing a problem

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem Area</th>
<th>If...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Cartridge** | A cartridge is not ejecting from the drive... | 1. Try unloading the drive (Operator Panel: **Commands > Unload**).  
2. Power cycle the library.  
3. If the cartridge does not eject from the drive, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. |
| The cartridge case or tape inside the cartridge is damaged... | Replace the tape cartridge. |
| Your cleaning cartridge expires... | Replace the cleaning cartridge. |
| A bar code label cannot be read by the bar code reader... | 1. Export the suspect cartridge from the library.  
2. Confirm that the bar code label is not damaged or missing. Replace the bar code label, if necessary.  
3. Import the cartridge back into the library.  
4. Inventory the library.  
   a. If no errors are reported, resume normal library operations.  
   b. If an error is reported, see Appendix A, “Error codes,” on page 115. |
| **Cartridge Magazine** | The magazine will not unlock after issuing the Unlock Magazine command from the Operator Panel... | 1. Power cycle the library.  
2. Try unlocking the magazine again (Operator Panel: **Unlock Magazine**, or Web user Interface: **Manage Library > Unlock Magazine**).  
   a. If the magazine does not unlock, see “Unlocking the cartridge magazine manually” on page 113.  
   b. If the magazine does unlock, resume normal library operations. |
| The magazine can be partially removed from the library... The magazine seems stuck on something inside the library... | 1. Verify that you requested the library to unlock the entire magazine, not just the I/O station (if enabled) then retry the operation.  
2. Carefully pull the magazine out of the library. Stop if you feel any resistance (as if something is blocking the magazine inside the library).  
3. If the magazine still cannot be removed from the library, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem Area</th>
<th>If...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Communication Functions</td>
<td>You are experiencing difficulty with exercising some library functions (for example, updating firmware or logging in to the library remotely)...</td>
<td>1. If you have a recent backup of your configuration, proceed to the next step. If you do not, try to save one now (Web User Interface: <strong>Configure Library &gt; Save/Restore</strong>).&lt;br&gt;2. If a static IP address is used, make note of your library's IP address. With DHCP, proceed to the next step.&lt;br&gt;3. Restore factory defaults (Operator Panel: <strong>Configuration &gt; Set Default</strong>).&lt;br&gt;4. With a static IP address, disable DHCP (the default setting) and enter the library IP address (Web User Interface: <strong>Configure Library &gt; Network</strong>; Operator Panel: <strong>Configuration &gt; Configure Network Settings</strong>). With DHCP, proceed to the next step.&lt;br&gt;5. Restore the library configuration (Web User Interface: <strong>Configure Library &gt; Save/Restore</strong>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encryption</td>
<td>Encryption error displayed when the drive detects an error associated with an encryption operation, if the problem occurred while the tape drive was writing data to, or reading data from, tape...</td>
<td>1. Check the host application to ensure that the host application is providing the correct encryption key.&lt;br&gt;a. Refer to the Sense Data that are returned for an encryption operation.&lt;br&gt;b. Retry the encryption operation after the host application problems are resolved.&lt;br&gt;2. Reset the drive.&lt;br&gt;a. Refer to the error code displayed on the Operator Panel if the drive resets and the POST fails.&lt;br&gt;b. Retry the encryption operation if the drive resets and POST complete without errors.&lt;br&gt;3. Ensure that the correct media is being used. Data encryption is supported by LTO Ultrium 8, M8, 7, 6, 5, and 4 Data Cartridges only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encryption-related error is posted...</td>
<td>Check the host application’s error logs, device driver logs, tape library error logs, and tape drive error logs for entries that are related to encryption.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Problem Area</td>
<td>If...</td>
<td>Then...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Error Codes or TapeAlert Flags</strong></td>
<td>The library issued an error code...</td>
<td>1. Make note of the error code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>An error message was received by way of email notification (if enabled)...</td>
<td>2. Power cycle the library.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>a. If the error recurs, see Appendix A, “Error codes,” on page 115.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>b. If the error does not recur, resume normal library operations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A TapeAlert flag was received...</td>
<td>1. Make note of the TapeAlert flag.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Power cycle the library.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>a. If the TapeAlert recurs, see Appendix B, “TapeAlert flags,” on page 132.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>b. If the TapeAlert does not recur, resume normal library operations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The error code represents an unrecoverable error...</td>
<td>See “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You get repeated errors...</td>
<td>1. Reset the library.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. If the library is still reporting errors, power cycle the library.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If no errors are reported, resume normal library operations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3. If the library still fails, reset factory defaults. If no errors are reported, resume normal library operations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4. If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You are experiencing a problem with your library and no error code was created...</td>
<td>1. Run Library Verify to identify and resolve the problem. See “Running library verify diagnostic procedures” on page 62.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Firmware</strong></td>
<td>The Library firmware does not complete the boot-up process and appears hung...</td>
<td>Failure of the login screen to display on the Operator Panel in 15 minutes indicates that the boot-up process is not completing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1. Power OFF the library and wait at least 1 minute before the library is powered ON to recover from the problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. If a library firmware update was completed, try repeating the update procedure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>All firmware (library and drive) is not at the latest level...</td>
<td>See “Updating library and drive firmware” on page 89.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Front Panel LEDs</strong></td>
<td>One or more front panel LEDs is ON or blinking...</td>
<td>See “Interpreting front panel LEDs” on page 108.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Host Attachment Interface</strong></td>
<td>You are experiencing host attachment interface problems...</td>
<td>See “Isolating host attachment interface problems” on page 107.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Problem Area</td>
<td>If...</td>
<td>Then...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installation and Configuration</td>
<td>You are experiencing trouble installing or configuring your library...</td>
<td>See “Installation and configuration problems” on page 108.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITDT-DCR</td>
<td>The Performance Test duration varies...</td>
<td>Items affecting the duration of the test:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• The level of adapter device driver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Your adapter model and type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library Not Booting</td>
<td>There is a blank operator panel/display...</td>
<td>Failure of the login screen to display on the Operator Panel in 15 minutes indicates that the boot-up process is not completing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The accessor does not move...</td>
<td>1. Power OFF the library and wait at least 1 minute before the library is powered ON to recover from the problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The display is stuck on initialization for extended period of time...</td>
<td>2. If a library firmware update was completed, try repeating the update procedure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logs</td>
<td>You are required to download the library log or drive log...</td>
<td>Using the Web User Interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Library log: Service Library &gt; Download Library Logs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Drive log: Service Library &gt; Download Drive Logs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Time Protocol (NTP)</td>
<td>The library time is not being updated by the NTP server...</td>
<td>Using the Web User Interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1. Disable NTP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Set the time manually.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3. Enable NTP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power</td>
<td>If the power supply switch is ON and the library is OFF...</td>
<td>See “Isolating library power problems” on page 106.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web User Interface</td>
<td>HTML error 404 appears on computer screen when trying to launch the Web User Interface...</td>
<td>See “Isolating Web User Interface problems” on page 107.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Isolating problems**

**Isolating library power problems**

1. Ensure that the power cord is plugged in at the power supply and at the electrical outlet, then turn library power ON. Feel for air that is flowing out of the cooling fan grill on the rear of the library. Power is good if air is flowing from the cooling fan grill.

2. If power is not working:
   a. Plug the power cord into another electrical outlet.
   b. Plug another device into the outlet to test.
   c. If the outlet tests OK, try another power cord.

3. If you verified that the electrical outlet and power cord works properly, but the power supply is still failing, replace the library.
4. If the power supply seems to be delivering power to the library; but air does not flow from the power-supply cooling fan grill on the rear of the library, replace the library.

**Isolating drive problems**

1. Ensure that the drive firmware is at the latest level (visit http://www.dell.com/support).
2. Cycle library power.
3. If the drive is experiencing permanent or temporary errors or if the Clean LED is lit on the front panel of the library, clean the drive.
4. Run **Library Verify**.
   a. If the test fails, replace the library.
5. With the host interface test tool, ITDT, run the Scan functions to verify that the host application interface can detect the drive and the library. To further test the interface communication path, run the Test Device function, if available, after the drive is selected. This function writes and reads data across the interface, also sending a command to the drive to run the internal performance read/write test.
6. If the host tool, ITDT, cannot detect the drive or library, look for problems with the host interface cabling, the HBA, the device driver, or the backup application software.

**Isolating Web User Interface problems**

1. Verify that you entered the account name and password correctly. The account name and password are case-sensitive.
2. Verify that other library users are not entering commands from the Web User Interface or Operator Panel at the same time you are issuing commands.
3. Ensure that library firmware is at the latest level (visit http://www.dell.com/support).
4. Ensure that the Ethernet cable is securely plugged in the rear of the library at the Ethernet port.
5. Ensure that the library has a valid Serial Number.
6. Ensure that the correct IP, netmask, and gateway addresses are keyed into the network parameters.
7. Ensure that the correct IP address is being used on the web browser.
8. If the Ethernet connection is a direct connection between the PC and the library, a special "crossover" Ethernet cable is required.
   **Note:** On newer PCs, either straight through or crossover Ethernet cables might be used since the crossover requirement is provided internally.
9. Check the Ethernet cable carefully (or try another cable) and, if the cable is connected to a network hub or switch, try a different port.
10. If the Web User Interface is still malfunctioning, refer to “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.

**Isolating host attachment interface problems**

After successfully exercising “Isolating drive problems” on page 107, and more specifically “Running library verify diagnostic procedures” on page 62 from the Operator Panel (Service > Library Verify), the following procedures are suggested to help isolate the failure to properly establish connectivity to the Host Bus adapter (HBA).

1. Use the ITDT-DCR utility to evaluate connectivity from the HBA through the cabling to the drive. ITDT-DCR does not require separate device drivers, thus the Operating System can scan, and find all the LTO devices that are attached.
a. If ITDT-DCR cannot successfully locate the LTO drive, suspect cabling or HBA problems, and skip to Step 4.

b. If ITDT-DCR successfully located the LTO drive, proceed to Step 3. See “ITDT-SE” on page 111 for a brief description of ITDT-DCR and instructions on how to download the tool from the web.

2. If ITDT-DCR successfully locates the LTO devices, verify that the correct application device drivers and backup application software is properly installed.

3. Ensure that all the required or latest available Operating System files or updates (DLLs, PTFs) are installed and applied.

### Installation and configuration problems

Problems that are encountered during the installation of the library are caused by improper application software configuration errors or an incorrectly configured operating system. If the application software that you are using is not communicating with the library after installation, check:

- **Accessor locking screw**: Ensure that the accessor locking screw on the rear panel of the library is removed before the library is powered ON. See “Removing the accessor locking screw” on page 28.

- **HBA LUN 0/1 support**: A single ID addresses both drive and library since the drive is LUN 0 and the library is LUN 1. These models require an HBA that supports LUN scanning, which must be enabled at the HBA. See “Logical Unit Number (LUN) scanning” on page 9.

- **Cable connections**: Ensure that there are no bent pins on cables and that all connections are securely fastened.

- **SAS cables and interposers**: Ensure that SAS cables and interposers (if any) are properly attached. See “Connecting the Host Interface cables” on page 28.

- **Backup application installation**: Refer to the documentation included with your backup application software for instructions on how to verify installation.

- **Device driver installation**: Ensure that the correct device driver, if applicable, is installed for the library.

**Note**: Many backup applications use their own drivers for the library and drive. Before a driver is installed, make sure that it is not in conflict with the software. Contact your backup application vendor for this information.

Review the information in Chapter 3, “Installation and configuration,” on page 21 to determine whether a step was missed or misread.

If you are still experiencing difficulty with installing or configuring your library, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.

**Important**: Do not disassemble the library. The warranty on your library is voided if the unit is disassembled without the approval of Dell Technical Support.

### Interpreting front panel LEDs

Light emitting diodes (LEDs) on the front panel of the library provide a visual indication about the status of certain library components. The LEDs can communicate that a problem exists when operator interventions cannot.

![Figure 113. Front panel LEDs](image-url)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Library Condition</th>
<th>Ready/Activity LED</th>
<th>Cleaning LED</th>
<th>Attention LED</th>
<th>Error LED</th>
<th>Message on Display</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>POST (Power ON Self Test)</td>
<td>Flashes 2 times every 3 seconds</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>INITIALIZING... INVENTORY...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magazine open</td>
<td>Flashes 2 times every 3 seconds</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>PLEASE INSERT MAGAZINE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magazine unlocked</td>
<td>Flashes 2 times every 3 seconds</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>MAGAZINE UNLOCKED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/O Station open</td>
<td>Flashes 2 times every 3 seconds</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>PLEASE CLOSE I/O STATION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/O Station unlocked</td>
<td>Flashes 2 times every 3 seconds</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library firmware is being updated</td>
<td>Flashes 2 times every 3 seconds</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>LOADER FIRMWARE UPDATING!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive firmware is being updated</td>
<td>Flashes 2 times every 3 seconds</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>DRIVE FIRMWARE UPDATING!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive dump is being uploaded to host computer</td>
<td>Flashes 2 times every 3 seconds</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>DRIVE DUMP DATA UPLOADING!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library is offline</td>
<td>Flashes 2 times every 3 seconds</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFFLINE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cartridge is being moved</td>
<td>Flashes 2 times every 3 seconds</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>READY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library error occurred</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>*** CHK *** CODE: [XXXX]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive error occurred</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>DRIVE FAULT CODE: [X]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cartridge error occurred</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>MEDIA FAULT CODE: [X]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleaning cartridge expired</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>REPLACE CLEANING MEDIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive requested cleaning</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>CLEAN DRIVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive is being cleaned</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>Flashes 1 time per second</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>CLEANING...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 20. Front Panel LED indicators
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Library Condition</th>
<th>Ready/Activity LED</th>
<th>Cleaning LED</th>
<th>Attention LED</th>
<th>Error LED</th>
<th>Message on Display</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Library is online and ready to receive a command</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>READY</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Reseating cables**

To reseat external library cables, complete the following steps:

1. Locate the following cables on the rear panel of the library.
   a. SAS attachment for the drive
   b. Ethernet cable for connection to a network
   c. Power supply cable
2. Check and reseat, if necessary, all of the cables that are connected to your library.
3. Verify that there is no damage to any connector pins.

**Emailing logs**

Logs provide a summary of the status, warnings, and errors in the library, and include configuration settings and information that is provided in Operator Interventions.

Download current logs of the library and drive when requested by your service representative. To email current logs:

1. Ensure that no applications are accessing the library. If a library operation is in progress, wait until it finishes before attempting to generate the logs.
2. Download the current library log from the Web User Interface by selecting **Service Library > Download Library Logs**, click **Refresh**, and click **Download**.
3. Download the current drive log from the Web User Interface by selecting **Service Library > Download Drive Logs**, click **Refresh**, and click **Download**.
4. When requested by Dell, attach the log to an email message and send it to Dell technical support for further diagnosis.
Chapter 7. Service procedures

ITDT-SE

ITDT-SE is a tool with multifunction capability and is a quick, convenient, and efficient method for drive firmware updates. It can also assist with drive dump retrievals.

Some of the capabilities of this tool:

- Runs quick or extended diagnostic procedures on tape drives. If the library is online to the server/host where the tool is, ITDT-SE communicates with the drive through the library to load and unload a test cartridge.
- Retrieves firmware memory dumps from tape drives and libraries.
- Completes a firmware update on tape drives or libraries. See the note about library firmware updates.
- Tests the performance of the environment by completely writing a cartridge and measuring performance.
- Retrieves and displays cartridge information.
- Verifies the encryption environment.
- Does not require special device drivers.
- Is available for most major platforms. Scans the host interface and finds and displays for selection all LTO devices.

The Tape Diagnostic tool (ITDT-SE) is available as a command-line utility and a graphical user interface (GUI) version.

- The Tape Diagnostic Tool (ITDT-SE) is a command-line utility. Start it by entering the executable command from the directory where the tool is located. The Help feature gives a brief explanation of each function and shows the required syntax.
- The Tape Diagnostic Tool (ITDT-SE) is a GUI version for Microsoft Windows. Microsoft Windows XP and Microsoft Windows Server 2003 (IX86, 32-bit) are supported.

**Note:** Be sure that you have the most current version of ITDT-SE if you are updating firmware on a recent drive type. Before ITDT-SE is used, verify that your library host operating system is at the latest released level. This verification ensures optimum read/write operations for diagnostic procedures.

**Note:** If the library has a BCR (Barcode Reader) that requires 9.00 or greater firmware, the Update function stops with an error code of "Unexpected Data" if you attempt to downgrade the library firmware.

To download the ITDT-SE tool and instructions for using the tool, visit [http://www.dell.com/support](http://www.dell.com/support).

Contacting Dell technical support

For customers in the United States, call 800-WWW-DELL (800-999-3355).

**Note:** If you do not have an active Internet connection, you can find contact information about your purchase invoice, packing slip, bill, or Dell product catalog.

Dell provides online and telephone-based support and service options. Service availability varies by country and product, and some services might not be available in your area. To contact Dell for sales, technical support, or customer service issues follow the steps that are listed:
2. Verify your country or region in the Choose A Country/Region menu at the bottom of the page.
3. Click Contact Us on the left side of the page.
4. Select the appropriate service or support link that is based on your need.
5. Choose the method of contacting Dell that is convenient for you.
Chapter 8. Removal and replacement procedures

“Required tools” on page 113

“Replacing a defective cartridge magazine” on page 113

“Unlocking the cartridge magazine manually” on page 113

Required tools

Installing or relocating the rack mount kit or deskside kit for your library requires the following tool:
- #2 Phillips screwdriver

Replacing a defective cartridge magazine

After your replacement cartridge magazine is received, complete the following steps to replace the defective cartridge magazine. The library does not need to be powered OFF for this procedure.

1. Remove the defective cartridge magazine from the library with the Operator Panel, the Web User Interface, or the manual method of removal.
   - Operator Panel: Use the Unlock Magazine command. See “Unlocking the cartridge magazine manually” on page 113.
   - Web UI: Manage Library > Unlock Magazine. See “Unlocking the cartridge magazine” on page 113.

2. After the defective magazine is removed from the library, remove all cartridges from the defective magazine and insert them into the replacement magazine.

3. Insert the new magazine with cartridges into the library. Wait for the library to complete its inventory before normal library operations resume.

4. Properly dispose of the defective magazine.

Unlocking the cartridge magazine manually

This procedure is used to remove the cartridge magazine manually when, for example, the power is turned OFF or if the magazine fails to unlock in response to the Unlock Magazine command from the Operator Panel and Web User Interface.

To unlock the cartridge magazine manually:

1. On the front panel, locate the access hole for the cartridge magazine lock release mechanism to the left of the Operator Panel (1 in Figure 114 on page 114).
2. Insert the end of a straightened paper clip, or similar object, into the lock release access hole. Gently push the lock mechanism to release the lock and eject the cartridge magazine.

3. If the I/O station is enabled, push the lock mechanism twice or push and hold the lock mechanism until the cartridge is withdrawn far enough to clear the I/O station lock.

4. Remove the cartridge magazine from the front of the library. If the magazine is stuck in the library and does not eject, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.

5. Examine the magazine and cartridges for damage.
   - If there is damage to a cartridge, replace that cartridge.
   - If there is damage to the magazine, replace the magazine.
Appendix A. Error codes

When an error occurs during operation of the library, the library stops the current operation and displays an error code on the Operator Panel. Unless otherwise noted, try to resolve the problem by cycling power to the library and retrying the last operation.

**Note:** When power cycling the library, wait 10 seconds after the power is switched OFF before powering ON again.

### Library error codes

#### Table 21. Library error codes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code (H)</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Panel Indication</th>
<th>Action Required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0000</td>
<td>No valid error code information.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 0001     | At power-on initialization, a firmware error was detected. | All 4 LEDs ON | 1. Upgrade/reinstall firmware and try again.  
2. Cycle the power supply and try again.  
   • If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
   • If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. |
| 0002     | At power-on initialization, a RAM (base area) error was detected. | Ready/Activity LED ON and Error LED ON |  |
| 0003     | At power-on initialization, a RAM (buffer area) error was detected. | CHK 0003 |  |
| 0008     | A usable drive could not be detected. | CHK 0008 | 1. Observe LEDs. See “Interpreting front panel LEDs” on page 108.  
2. Reseat all cables. See “Reseating cables” on page 110.  
3. Cycle the power supply and try again.  
   • If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
   • If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code (H)</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Panel Indication</th>
<th>Action Required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 0009    | The accessor locking screw has not been removed. | CHK 0009 | 1. Remove the accessor locking screws. See “Removing the accessor locking screw” on page 28.  
2. Cycle the power supply and try again.  
   • If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
   • If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.  |
| 0010    | Information acquisition from the DHCP server failed. | - | 1. Observe LEDs. See “Interpreting front panel LEDs” on page 108.  
2. Confirm the DHCP server settings.  
3. Reseat all cables. See “Reseating cables” on page 110.  
4. Cycle the power supply and try again.  
   • If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
   • If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.  |
| 0011    | Time acquisition from the NTP server failed. | - | 1. Observe LEDs. See “Interpreting front panel LEDs” on page 108.  
2. Confirm the time server settings.  
3. Reseat all cables. See “Reseating cables” on page 110.  
4. Cycle the power supply and try again.  
   • If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
   • If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.  |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code (H)</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Panel Indication</th>
<th>Action Required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 0020     | LDI I/F error. Transmit data abnormality detected (NAK reception). | - | 1. Observe LEDs. See “Interpreting front panel LEDs” on page 108.  
2. Reseat all cables. See “Reseating cables” on page 110.  
3. Cycle the power supply and try again.  
   • If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
   • If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. |
| 0021     | LDI I/F error. Receive timeout detected (ACK/NAK reception). | - | |
| 0022     | LDI I/F error. Response packet reception timeout detected. | - | |
| 0023     | LDI I/F error. ENQ receive timeout detected. | - | |
| 0024     | LDI I/F error. Receive data abnormality detected. | - | |
| 0029     | LDI command ends abnormally. | - | 1. Confirm the Encryption Key Manager settings.  
2. Reseat all cables. See “Reseating cables” on page 110.  
3. Cycle the power supply and try again.  
   • If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
   • If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. |
| 002A     | Commands to the Encryption Key Manager over the retry limit. | - | 1. Reseat all cables. See “Reseating cables” on page 110.  
2. Cycle the power supply and try again.  
   • If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
   • If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. |
<p>| 002B     | Commands to the encryption capable drive over the retry limit. | - | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code (H)</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Panel Indication</th>
<th>Action Required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>002C</td>
<td>LDI I/F error. ACK IU event timeout detected.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Cycle the power supply and try again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>002D</td>
<td>LDI I/F error. Response IU event timeout detected.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>002E</td>
<td>LDI I/F error. Transfer Ready IU event timeout detected.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>002F</td>
<td>LDI I/F error. Undefined error detected.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0040</td>
<td>A drive media error detected upon insertion.</td>
<td>CHK 0040</td>
<td>1. Verify that the cartridge is compatible with the drive in your library. See “Cartridge compatibility” on page 93.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Verify that the cartridge is not write-protected. See “Write-Protect switch” on page 97.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3. If it is a cleaning cartridge, verify that the cartridge is not expired. See “Cleaning cartridge” on page 95.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4. Cycle the power supply and try again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0041</td>
<td>A hardware error detected upon media insertion</td>
<td>CHK 0041</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0042</td>
<td>A drive load timeout error detected upon insertion.</td>
<td>CHK 0042</td>
<td>Cycle the power supply and try again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0048</td>
<td>Incompatible medium installed.</td>
<td>CHK 0048</td>
<td>Verify that the cartridge is compatible with the drive installed in the library. See “Cartridge compatibility” on page 93.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code (H)</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Panel Indication</td>
<td>Action Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0053</td>
<td>Response acknowledge error received from bar code reader. Suspect the bar code reader cable connection.</td>
<td>CHK 0053</td>
<td>1. Initiate an inventory. See “Conducting a library inventory” on page 57 (Operator Panel) or “Conducting a library inventory” on page 70 (Web User Interface). 2. Cycle the power supply and try again.  • If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  • If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0056</td>
<td>Receive data checksum error received from bar code reader. Suspect the bar code reader cable connection.</td>
<td>CHK 0056</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0057</td>
<td>Invalid data received from bar code reader. Suspect the bar code reader cable connection.</td>
<td>CHK 0057</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0058</td>
<td>A bar code reader read-error detected. Suspect the bar code reader cable connection.</td>
<td>CHK 0058</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0059</td>
<td>A bar code reader FLASH control error detected. Suspect the bar code reader cable connection.</td>
<td>CHK 0059</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>005A</td>
<td>A bar code reader diagnostics error detected. Suspect the bar code reader cable connection.</td>
<td>CHK 005A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>005B</td>
<td>(I^2)C I/F error. A transfer retry detected. Suspect the bar code reader cable connection.</td>
<td>CHK 005B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>005C</td>
<td>(I^2)C I/F error. Interrupt timeout detected. Suspect the bar code reader cable connection.</td>
<td>CHK 005C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>005D</td>
<td>(I^2)C I/F error. Invalid signal (NAK) detected. Suspect the bar code reader cable connection.</td>
<td>CHK 005D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>005E</td>
<td>(I^2)C I/F error. Bus arbitration lost error detected. Suspect the bar code reader cable connection.</td>
<td>CHK 005E</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>005F</td>
<td>(I^2)C I/F error. Ready condition does not occur. Suspect the bar code reader cable connection.</td>
<td>CHK 005F</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code (H)</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Panel Indication</td>
<td>Action Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 0070    | Calibration failed because the accessor contains media. Suspect the centering sensor. | CHK 0070 | 1. Attempt to unload the cartridge from the accessor. See “Moving cartridges” on page 56 (Operator Panel) or “Moving cartridges” on page 68 (Web User Interface).  
2. Cycle the power supply and try again.  
• If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
• If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. |
| 0071    | Calibration failed due to an empty magazine. Suspect the magazine set sensor. | CHK 0071 | Cycle the power supply and try again.  
• If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
• If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. |
| 0072    | Calibration measurement invalid data error. Suspect the centering sensor, X motor, or P motor. | CHK 0072 |  |
| 0074    | GET, centering check, or bar code reader read operation failed because the accessor contains media. Suspect the centering sensor. | CHK 0074 |  |
| 0075    | PUT operation failed because the accessor contains no media. Suspect the centering sensor. | CHK 0075 |  |
| 007C    | Drive does not enter EJECT state (and media not ejected) within 200 seconds of a GET command. Suspect the drive. | CHK 007C | 1. If the cartridge does not eject, try to unload the cartridge from the drive with the Operator Panel (Commands > Unload) or the Web User Interface (Manage Library > Unload). Move the cartridge from the drive to the I/O Station. Remove the cartridge from the library and inspect for damage and replace, if necessary.  
2. Cycle the power supply and try again.  
• If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
• If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code (H)</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Panel Indication</th>
<th>Action Required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 007D    | Drive does not enter MOUNT state within 200 seconds of a PUT command. Suspect the drive or X motor. | CHK 007D | Cycle the power supply and try again.  
• If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
• If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. |
| 007E    | Drive does not enter SET state within 3 seconds of a PUT command. Suspect the drive or X motor. | CHK 007E | |
| 007F    | Drive I/F or connection error occurs during a PUT operation or GET operation. Suspect the drive. | CHK 007F | 1. Reseat all cables. See “Reseating cables” on page 110.  
2. Cycle the power supply and try again.  
• If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume  
• If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code (H)</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Panel Indication</th>
<th>Action Required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 0080    | X movement error #1. During X movement, the target stop position's origin sensor error detected. Suspect the X origin sensor or X motor. | CHK 0080 | 1. Check the accessor locking screw and remove it if it is installed. See “Removing the accessor locking screw” on page 28.  
2. Cycle the power supply and try again.  
• If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
• If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. |
| 0081    | X movement error #2. During X movement, a motor sync error detected. Suspect the X encoder sensor or X motor. | CHK 0081 | |
| 0082    | X movement error #3. During initialization, a motor sync error detected. Suspect the X encoder sensor or X motor. | CHK 0082 | |
| 0083    | During an eject operation or move operation (to a storage position), the X origin sensor could not be detected. Suspect the X origin sensor or X motor. | CHK 0083 | |
| 0084    | During initialization, the X origin position could not be detected. Suspect the X origin sensor or X motor. | CHK 0084 | |
| 0088    | X calibration error #1. During X calibration, centering sensor OFF condition could not be detected. | CHK 0088 | |
| 0089    | X calibration error #2. During X calibration, centering sensor ON condition could not be detected. | CHK 0089 | |
| 008F    | During X operation, the cartridge magazine was removed. Suspect the magazine set sensor. | CHK 008F | 1. Confirm that the magazine is closed.  
2. Cycle the power supply and try again.  
• If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
• If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code (H)</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Panel Indication</th>
<th>Action Required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 00B0    | Failed to detect media in the accessor at completion of GET operation. Suspect the centering sensor, X motor, or P motor. | CHK 00B0         | 1. Confirm the media is compatible.  
2. Cycle the power supply and try again.  
   • If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
   • If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.               |
| 00B1    | No media is contained in the specified cell (Cell Empty). Suspect the centering sensor, X motor, or P motor. | CHK 00B1         | Cycle the power supply and try again.  
   • If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
   • If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.               |
| 00B2    | Media detected in the accessor at completion of centering check operation. Suspect the centering sensor.       | CHK 00B2         | 1. If the cartridge remains in the accessor, try to move the cartridge from the accessor to the I/O Station with the Operator Panel or Web User Interface. Remove the cartridge from the library and inspect for damage and replace, if necessary.  
2. Cycle the power supply and try again.  
   • If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
   • If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.               |
| 00B3    | Media detected in the accessor at completion of PUT operation. Suspect the centering sensor.                    | CHK 00B3         | 1. If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
   • If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.               |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code (H)</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Panel Indication</th>
<th>Action Required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 00B8    | accessor error #1. Reverse REV position (PP1) error (accessor origin not detected or FWD position detected). Suspect the P origin sensor, FWD sensor, or P motor. | CHK 00B8 | 1. Check the accessor locking screw and remove it if it is installed. See “Removing the accessor locking screw” on page 28. 2. Cycle the power supply and try again.  
- If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
- If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. |
| 00B9    | accessor error #2. Forward FWD position (PP2) error (accessor origin detected or FWD not detected). Suspect the P origin sensor, FWD sensor, or P motor. | CHK 00B9 |  |
| 00BA    | accessor error #3. PUT/GET/bar code reader position (PP4/PP5/PPBF/PPBR) error (accessor origin or FWD detected, or cell full). Suspect the P origin sensor, FWD sensor, or P motor. | CHK 00BA |  |
| 00BC    | During initialization, the accessor origin could not be detected. Suspect the P origin sensor, FWD sensor, or P motor. | CHK 00BC |  |
| 00BD    | During accessor movement, the movement stop condition detected. Suspect the P encoder sensor or P motor. | CHK 00BD |  |
| 00BF    | No gap condition detected at the completion of accessor operation. Suspect the centering sensor, P origin sensor, FWD sensor, or P motor. | CHK 00BF |  |
| 00C0    | accessor operation disabled because a cartridge magazine was removed. Suspect the magazine set sensor. | CHK 00C0 | 1. Confirm that the magazine is closed.  
2. Cycle the power supply and try again.  
- If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
- If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code (H)</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Panel Indication</th>
<th>Action Required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 00C8    | Centering calibration error #1. During centering calibration, centering sensor OFF condition could not be detected. Suspect the centering sensor or P motor. | CHK 00C8 | Cycle the power supply and try again.  
- If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
- If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. |
| 00C9    | Centering calibration error #2. During centering calibration, centering sensor ON condition could not be detected. Suspect the centering sensor, X motor, or P motor. | CHK 00C9 |  |
| 00D0    | Checksum error detected during firmware update. | CHK 00D0 | 1. Confirm the firmware file version.  
2. Reinstall the firmware file.  
3. Cycle the power supply and try again.  
- If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
- If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. |
| 00D1    | Firmware ID error detected during firmware update. | CHK 00D1 |  |
| 00D2    | Boot information error detected during firmware update. | CHK 00D2 |  |
| 00D3    | Bar code reader is not in maintenance mode during bar code reader firmware update (operation interrupted). Suspect the bar code reader cable connection. | CHK 00D3 | 1. Initiate an inventory. See “Conducting a library inventory” on page 57 (Operator Panel) or “Conducting a library inventory” on page 70 (Web User Interface).  
2. Cycle the power supply and try again.  
- If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
- If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. |
| 00D9    | Magazine failed to unlock. Suspect the magazine or magazine sensor. | CHK 00D9 | 1. Cycle the power supply and try again.  
2. Manually unlock the magazine, remove the magazine from the library, and inspect it for damage.  
- If not damaged, return it to the library and run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
- If damaged, replace the magazine. |
| 00DA    | I/O Station failed to unlock. Suspect the magazine or magazine sensor. | CHK 00DA |  |
### Table 21. Library error codes (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code (H)</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Panel Indication</th>
<th>Action Required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 00DD     | An error detected during bar code reader firmware check. Suspect the bar code reader cable connection. | CHK 00DD | 1. Initiate an inventory. See “Conducting a library inventory” on page 57 (Operator Panel) or “Conducting a library inventory” on page 70 (Web User Interface).  
2. Cycle the power supply and try again.  
• If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
• If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. |
| 00E0     | Write operation not finished within 1 ms when writing data to flash memory. | CHK 00E0 | Cycle the power supply and try again.  
• If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
• If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. |
| 00E1     | Clear operation not finished within 10 seconds when clearing a sector in flash memory. | CHK 00E1 |  |
| 00E2     | Error detected in tape library configuration stored in flash memory. | CHK 00E2 |  |
| 00E3     | Checksum error detected in flash memory. | CHK 00E3 |  |
| 00F0     | Sensor error #1. Accessor encoder sensor B error detected during blink check. Suspect the accessor encoder sensor B. | CHK 00F0 |  |
Table 21. Library error codes (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code (H)</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Panel Indication</th>
<th>Action Required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 00F1     | Sensor error #2. Accessor encoder sensor A error detected during blink check. Suspect the accessor encoder sensor A. | CHK 00F1 | Cycle the power supply and try again.  
• If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
• If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. |
| 00F2     | Sensor error #3. X encoder sensor error detected during blink check. Suspect the X encoder sensor. | CHK 00F2 | |
| 00F3     | Sensor error #4. Magazine sensor error detected during blink check. Suspect the magazine sensor. | CHK 00F3 | |
| 00F8     | Sensor error #5. X origin sensor error detected during blink check. Suspect the X origin sensor. | CHK 00F8 | |
| 00F9     | Sensor error #6. Cartridge sensor error detected during blink check. Suspect the cartridge sensor. | CHK 00F9 | |
| 00FA     | Sensor error #7. Accessor forward sensor error detected during blink check. Suspect the accessor forward sensor. | CHK 00FA | |
| 00FB     | Sensor error #8. Accessor origin sensor error detected during blink check. Suspect the accessor origin sensor. | CHK 00FB | |
### Drive error codes

**Table 22. Drive error codes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code (H)</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Panel indication</th>
<th>Action Required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0200</td>
<td>Invalid data sent to drive.</td>
<td>CHK 0200</td>
<td>1. Reseat all cables. See “Reseating cables” on page 110.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NAK detected.</td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Cycle the power supply and try again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resumes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0201</td>
<td>Timeout error occurred while drive is waiting for response.</td>
<td>CHK 0201</td>
<td>• If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0203</td>
<td>Drive disconnected.</td>
<td>CHK 0203</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0205</td>
<td>Drive busy.</td>
<td>CHK 0205</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0206</td>
<td>Command could not be executed because drive is not mounted.</td>
<td>CHK 0206</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>020E</td>
<td>Drive error detected.</td>
<td>CHK 020E</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>020F</td>
<td>Unsupported drive detected.</td>
<td>CHK 020F</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0222</td>
<td>Media could not be ejected because drive is in Prevent Medium Removal state.</td>
<td>CHK 0222</td>
<td>1. Release the drive Prevent Medium Removal state from the host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Reseat all cables. See “Reseating cables” on page 110.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3. Cycle the power supply and try again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• If the problem is corrected, run Library Verify before normal library operations resumes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Web User Interface error messages

**Table 23. Web user error messages**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Issuing Panel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Error</td>
<td>Users full.</td>
<td>User Access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You cannot remove yourself.</td>
<td>User Access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter Error</td>
<td>Login failure.</td>
<td>Login</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unsupported update file.</td>
<td>Firmware Update</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Invalid parameter found in [***].</td>
<td>Configure Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Please input parameter of [***].</td>
<td>Configure Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Password parameter error.</td>
<td>User Access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>User name parameter error.</td>
<td>User Access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Not enough role.</td>
<td>User Access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A user name unmatched.</td>
<td>User Access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A user is already existing.</td>
<td>User Access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Users full.</td>
<td>User Access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flush ROM write error detected.</td>
<td>User Access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>User information access failure.</td>
<td>User Access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command Error</td>
<td>Move command execution failure.</td>
<td>Move Cartridges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Code:“*****”)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unload command execution failure: [***].</td>
<td>Unload Drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Drive not ready.</td>
<td>Unload Drive, Download Drive Logs, Firmware Update</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medium not present.</td>
<td>Unload Drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Online command execution failure: [***].</td>
<td>Library State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Offline command execution failure: [***].</td>
<td>Library State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reset command execution failure: [***].</td>
<td>Reset Library/Drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inventory command execution failure: [***].</td>
<td>Inventory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Normal Dump” command execution failure: [***].</td>
<td>Download Drive Logs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;Force Dump&quot; command execution failure: [***].</td>
<td>Download Drive Logs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Restore failure.</td>
<td>Save/Restore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Library serial number is unmatched</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Writing to cookie was failure.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The configuration data was not saved to cookie.</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Message</td>
<td>Issuing Panel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleaning Command Error</td>
<td>Illegal medium.</td>
<td>Clean Drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Source element empty.</td>
<td>Clean Drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Destination element full.</td>
<td>Clean Drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Drive failure.</td>
<td>Clean Drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prevent medium removal.</td>
<td>Clean Drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>During import/export element access.</td>
<td>Clean Drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gap detected.</td>
<td>Clean Drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Not loaded.</td>
<td>Clean Drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Expired medium.</td>
<td>Clean Drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Write protect error.</td>
<td>Clean Drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cleaning execution failure: [****].</td>
<td>Clean Drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/O Error</td>
<td>File open failure.</td>
<td>Download Drive Logs, Download Library Logs, Save/Restore, Firmware Update</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unsupported file.</td>
<td>Save/Restore, Firmware Update</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Error</td>
<td>*** command transmission failure.</td>
<td>Manage Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*** information access failure.</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Library logs download failure.</td>
<td>Download Library Logs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Retry download.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Email submit failure.</td>
<td>Notifications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SNMP trap submit failure.</td>
<td>Notifications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Log data access failure.</td>
<td>Traces, View Library Logs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Port open failure [<strong>.</strong>.<strong>.</strong>:****]. Do you want to retry?</td>
<td>Displayed after 3 unsuccessful attempts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Port open failure [<strong>.</strong>.<strong>.</strong>:****]. Check the library and the network condition setting.</td>
<td>Displayed after 3 unsuccessful attempts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Web interface version is not matched between Library and the web application.</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Restart the browser.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>There is a possibility of malfunctioning if you proceed operation from Web.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library Busy</td>
<td>Library information updating now.</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cannot access library information</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Trap definitions (types)

The TL1000 library supports the following types of SNMP traps.

#### Table 24. Trap list

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trap ID</th>
<th>Event Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Clean Drive LED</th>
<th>Attention LED</th>
<th>Error LED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Emergency</td>
<td>• Drive error</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Library error</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Error</td>
<td>• Drive error</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Library error</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>(Drive) • Drive error</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td></td>
<td>(Library) • Library error</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td></td>
<td>(Drive) • Cleaning demand reception from drive</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td></td>
<td>(Library) • Cleaning cartridge demand for an exchange</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>Information</td>
<td>(Drive) • Beginning of inventory</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(Library) • Change in library operation mode</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Beginning of medium move</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Completion of medium move</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Library/Drive not ready</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Library/Drive to online</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Magazine unlock operation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• I/O Station unlock operation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Appendix A. Error codes 131
Additional information is provided to the reader about the tape library and tape drive. All error code and diagnostic information cannot be accessed from the Operator Panel of the library. The Operator Panel will, however, display other library error codes and drive error codes when problems occur. For a listing of Operator Panel error messages, see Appendix A, “Error codes,” on page 115.

TapeAlert is a standard that defines status conditions and problems that are experienced by devices such as tape drives, autoloaders, and libraries. The standard enables a server to read TapeAlert messages (called flags) from a tape drive. The server reads the flags from Log Sense Page 0x2E.

This library is compatible with TapeAlert technology, which provides error and diagnostic information about the drives and the library to the server. Because library and drive firmware might change periodically, the SNMP interface in the library does not require code changes if devices add extra TapeAlerts that are not supported today. However, if this change occurs, the MIB is written to minimize impact to the SNMP monitoring station. At the time of this writing, the TapeAlert flags in this appendix correctly represent TapeAlerts that are sent. The MIB file must not be taken to mean that all traps that are defined in the MIB will be sent by the library or that they will be sent in the future.

### TapeAlert flags supported by the library

**Table 25. TapeAlert flags supported by the library**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flag Number</th>
<th>Flag Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Action Required</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>01</td>
<td>Library Hardware A</td>
<td>The library mechanism is having trouble with communicating with the tape drive.</td>
<td>1. Cycle the power supply and try again. 2. If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>02</td>
<td>Library Hardware B</td>
<td>The library mechanism has a hardware fault.</td>
<td></td>
<td>W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>03</td>
<td>Library Hardware C</td>
<td>Library mechanism has a hardware fault that requires a reset to recover.</td>
<td>1. Reset the library. For details, see “Rebooting the drive” on page 58. 2. Restart the operation. 3. If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 25. TapeAlert flags supported by the library (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flag Number</th>
<th>Flag Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Action Required</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 04          | Library Hardware D | The library mechanism has a hardware fault that is not mechanism-related, or requires power cycle to recover. | 1. Cycle the power supply and try again.  
2. If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. | C    |
| 06          | Library Interface | The library identified an interface fault.                                  | 1. Check all cables and cable connections.  
2. Restart the operation.  
3. If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. | C    |
| 08          | Library Maintenance | Library preventive maintenance required.                                    | Preventive maintenance of the library is required. Consult the library user's manual for device-specific preventive maintenance tasks. | W    |
| 12          | Library Stray Tape | A cartridge was left in the drive inside the library by a previous hardware fault. | 1. Try unloading the cartridge from the drive with the Operator Panel or Web User Interface.  
   • If the cartridge unloads, move the cartridge from the drive to the I/O station. Remove the cartridge and inspect for damage. If not damaged, return the cartridge to the library. Run Library Verify before normal library operations resume.  
   • If the cartridge did not unload from the drive, cycle the power supply and try again.  
2. If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. | C    |
| 13          | Library Pick Retry | There is a potential problem with the drive ejecting a cartridge short or with the library mechanism picking a cartridge from a slot. | No action is required. | W    |
| 14          | Library Place Retry | There is a potential problem with the library mechanism placing a cartridge into a slot. | No action is required. | W    |
### Table 25. TapeAlert flags supported by the library (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flag Number</th>
<th>Flag Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Action Required</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Library I/O station</td>
<td>The operation failed because the library I/O station is open.</td>
<td>Close the I/O station.</td>
<td>W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Library Mailslot</td>
<td>Mechanical problem with the I/O station.</td>
<td>There is a mechanical problem with the library I/O station.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Library Magazine</td>
<td>Library magazine not present.</td>
<td>The library cannot operate without the magazine.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1. Insert the magazine into the library.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Restart the operation.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Library Offline</td>
<td>Library manually turned offline.</td>
<td>The library was manually turned offline and is unavailable for use.</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Library Drive Offline</td>
<td>Library turned internal drive offline.</td>
<td>The drive inside the library was taken offline. This flag is for information purposes only. No action is required.</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Library Scan Retry</td>
<td>There is a potential problem with the bar code label of the scanner hardware in the library mechanism.</td>
<td>No action is required.</td>
<td>W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Power Supply</td>
<td>PSU failure inside the library subsystem.</td>
<td>The power supply failed inside the library. See “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.</td>
<td>W</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


### TapeAlert flags supported by the Ultrium tape drive

### Table 26. TapeAlert flags supported by the Ultrium tape drive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flag Number</th>
<th>Flag Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Action Required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Hard error</td>
<td>Set for any unrecoverable read, write, or positioning error (this flag is set with flags 4, 5, or 6).</td>
<td>See the action that is required for Flag Number 4, 5, or 6, if set, in this table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Media</td>
<td>Set for any unrecoverable read, write, or positioning error that is because of a faulty tape cartridge.</td>
<td>Replace the tape cartridge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Read failure</td>
<td>Set for any unrecoverable read error where the isolation is uncertain and failure might be because of a faulty tape cartridge or drive hardware.</td>
<td>If Flag Number 4 is also set, the tape cartridge is defective. Replace the tape cartridge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flag Number</td>
<td>Flag Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Action Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Write failure</td>
<td>Set for any unrecoverable write or positioning error where isolation is uncertain and failure might be because of a faulty tape cartridge.</td>
<td>If Flag Number 9 is also set, make sure that the write-protect switch is set so that data can be written to the tape. See “Write-Protect switch” on page 97. If Flag Number 4 is also set, the tape cartridge is defective. Replace the tape cartridge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Media life</td>
<td>Set when the tape cartridge reaches its end of life (EOL).</td>
<td>1. Copy the data to another tape cartridge. 2. Discard the old (EOL) tape.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Not data grade</td>
<td>Set when the tape cartridge is not data-grade. Any data that you back up to the tape is at risk.</td>
<td>Replace the tape cartridge with a data-grade tape cartridge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Write protect</td>
<td>Set when the tape drive detects that the tape cartridge is write-protected.</td>
<td>Ensure that the cartridge's write-protect switch is set so that data can be written to the tape. See “Write-Protect switch” on page 97.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>No removal</td>
<td>Set when the tape drive receives an UNLOAD command after the server prevented the tape cartridge from being removed.</td>
<td>Refer to the documentation for your server's operating system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Cleaning media</td>
<td>Set when a cleaning tape is loaded into the drive.</td>
<td>No action that is required. Status only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Unsupported format</td>
<td>Set when a non-supported cartridge type is loaded into the drive or when the cartridge format was corrupted.</td>
<td>Replace the invalid cartridge with a supported tape cartridge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Unrecoverable snapped tape</td>
<td>Set when the operation failed because the tape in the drive snapped.</td>
<td>Do not attempt to extract the tape cartridge. See “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Cartridge memory chip failure</td>
<td>Set when a cartridge memory (CM) failure is detected on the loaded tape cartridge.</td>
<td>Replace the tape cartridge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Forced eject</td>
<td>Set when a tape cartridge was unloaded manually while the drive was reading or writing.</td>
<td>No action that is required. Status only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Media that are loaded is Read-only format</td>
<td>Set when a cartridge marked as read-only is loaded into the drive. The flag is cleared when the cartridge is ejected.</td>
<td>No action that is required. Status only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Tape directory that is corrupted in cartridge memory</td>
<td>Set when the tape drive detects that the tape directory in the cartridge memory was corrupted.</td>
<td>Re-read all data from the tape to rebuild the tape directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flag Number</td>
<td>Flag Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Action Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 19          | Nearing media life               | Set when the tape cartridge is nearing its specified end of life. It is cleared when the cartridge is removed from the drive. | 1. Copy the data to another tape cartridge.  
2. Replace the tape cartridge. |
<p>| 20          | Clean now                        | Set when the tape drive detects that it needs cleaning.                                                | Clean the tape drive.                                       |
| 21          | Clean periodic                   | Set when the tape drive detects that it needs routine cleaning.                                        | Clean the tape drive as soon as possible. The drive can continue to operate, but requires cleaning soon. |
| 22          | Expired cleaning media           | Set when the tape drive detects a cleaning cartridge that is expired.                                   | Replace the cleaning cartridge.                             |
| 23          | Invalid cleaning cartridge       | Set when the drive expects a cleaning cartridge to be loaded and the loaded cartridge is not a cleaning cartridge.  | Use a valid cleaning cartridge.                            |
| 30          | Hardware A                       | Set when a hardware failure occurs that requires that you reset the tape drive to recover.              | See “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.         |
| 31          | Hardware B                       | Set when the tape drive fails its internal Power-On Self-Tests (POSTs).                               | Note the error code on the single-character display and see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111. |
| 32          | Interface                        | Set when the tape drive detects a problem with the host interface.                                     | See “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.         |
| 33          | Eject media                      | Set when a failure occurs that requires the tape cartridge to be unloaded from the drive.              | Unload the tape cartridge, then reinset and restart the operation. If this procedure fails, use different media. |
| 34          | Download fail                    | Set when an FMR image is unsuccessfully downloaded to the tape drive via the SAS interface.           | Check the FMR image is correct. If necessary, download the correct FMR image. |
| 36          | Drive temperature                | Set when the drive temperature sensor indicates that the drive’s temperature exceeds the recommended temperature of the library. |                                                |
| 37          | Drive voltage                    | Set when the drive detects power supply voltages that approach or exceed the specified voltage limits. | See “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.         |
| 38          | Predictive failure of drive hardware | Set when a hardware failure of the tape drive is predicted.                                            |                                                  |
| 39          | Diagnostics required             | Set when the tape drive detects a failure that requires diagnostics for isolation.                     |                                                            |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flag Number</th>
<th>Flag Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Action Required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>Tape directory invalid at unload</td>
<td>Set when the tape directory on the tape cartridge that was previously unloaded is corrupted. The file-search performance is degraded.</td>
<td>Use your backup software to rebuild the tape directory by reading all the data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>Tape system area write failure</td>
<td>Set when the tape cartridge that was previously unloaded might not write its system area successfully.</td>
<td>Copy the data to another tape cartridge, then discard the old tape cartridge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>Tape system area read failure</td>
<td>Set when the tape system area might not be read successfully at load time.</td>
<td>Copy the data to another tape cartridge, then discard the old tape cartridge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>Load failure</td>
<td>Set when a hardware malfunction prevents the tape cartridge from being loaded into the drive, or when a tape cartridge is stuck in the drive.</td>
<td>If the tape cartridge does not load in the drive:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1. Remove the tape cartridge from the library and inspect it for damage. If damaged, discard it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Insert another tape cartridge into the tape drive. If the problem persists, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If the tape cartridge is stuck in the drive:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1. Attempt to unload the tape from the drive with the host backup application that is with the drive, or with the remote or local UI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. If the cartridge still does not unload, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flag Number</td>
<td>Flag Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Action Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Unload failure</td>
<td>Set when a drive hardware error prevents the tape cartridge from being unloaded from the tape drive, or when the tape cartridge is stuck in the drive.</td>
<td>1. Unload the cartridge from the drive with the Operator Panel or the Web User Interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Try a power cycle of the entire library. This procedure causes the drive to reset and attempt to rewind and unload when power is restored. If the cartridge unloads, remove it from the library and inspect it. If damaged, discard it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3. Try to unload the cartridge from the drive again with the Operator Panel or the Web User Interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4. If the cartridge still does not unload from the drive, see “Contacting Dell technical support” on page 111.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>WORM Media integrity check failed</td>
<td>Set when the drive determines that the data on the tape is suspect from a WORM point of view.</td>
<td>1. Copy the data to another WORM tape cartridge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Discard the old WORM tape.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>WORM Media overwrite attempted</td>
<td>Set when the drive rejects a write operation because the rules for allowing WORM writes are not met. Data is appended to WORM media only. Overwrites to WORM media are not allowed.</td>
<td>Append the information about a WORM tape cartridge or write the data to a non-WORM cartridge.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Appendix C. Sense data

“Sense Key definitions” on page 139

“Library sense data” on page 139

“Tape drive sense data” on page 141

### Sense Key definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SK</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>00</td>
<td>No Sense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>01</td>
<td>Recovered Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>02</td>
<td>Not Ready</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>03</td>
<td>Media Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04</td>
<td>Hardware Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05</td>
<td>Illegal Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>06</td>
<td>Unit Attention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07</td>
<td>Data Protect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08</td>
<td>Blank Check</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>09</td>
<td>Reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0A</td>
<td>Reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0B</td>
<td>Aborted Command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0C</td>
<td>Reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0D</td>
<td>Volume Overflow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0E</td>
<td>Reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0F</td>
<td>Reserved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Library sense data

“Library sense data” on page 139 lists the Additional Sense Codes (ASC) and Additional Sense Code Qualifiers (ASCQ) associated with the reported Sense Keys.

A sense key of 00h (no sense) has no ASC/ASCQ associated with it. A few ASC/ASCQs are associated with more than one sense key. The sense keys that can give a particular ASC/ASCQ are indicated within the Sense Key column.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sense Key</th>
<th>ASC</th>
<th>ASCQ</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No Sense (00)</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>No sense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>03</td>
<td>Cleaning cartridge installed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recovered Error (01)</td>
<td>5B</td>
<td>02</td>
<td>Log counter at maximum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not Ready (02)</td>
<td>04</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Logical unit not ready, cause not reportable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>04</td>
<td>01</td>
<td>Logical unit is in process of becoming ready</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>04</td>
<td>03</td>
<td>Manual intervention required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3A</td>
<td>02</td>
<td>Media not present (tray open)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td>05</td>
<td>During reprogramming mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardware Error (04)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>01</td>
<td>Mechanical position error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>nn</td>
<td>Diagnostic failure on component nn (80h-ffh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>44</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Internal target failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>53</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Media load or eject failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td>07</td>
<td>NVRAM failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illegal Request (05)</td>
<td>1A</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Parameter list length error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Invalid command operation code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21</td>
<td>01</td>
<td>Invalid element address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Invalid field in CDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Logical unit not supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Invalid field in parameter list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Incompatible medium installed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3B</td>
<td>0D</td>
<td>Media destination element full</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3B</td>
<td>0E</td>
<td>Media source element empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3B</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>Source drive not unloaded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>53</td>
<td>02</td>
<td>Media removal prevented</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Drive failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Exchange slot full</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Cartridge wrong insertion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit Attention (06)</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Not-ready to ready transition, media may have changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28</td>
<td>01</td>
<td>Import or export element accessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>29</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Power ON occurred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2A</td>
<td>02</td>
<td>Log parameter changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3F</td>
<td>01</td>
<td>Microcode has been changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>41</td>
<td>FE</td>
<td>Drive error message detected*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 28. Library sense data (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sense Key</th>
<th>ASC</th>
<th>ASCQ</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aborted Command (0B)</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>nn</td>
<td>LDI command failure**</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* This code is preserved only in the library log when “FID” or “ATTN DRV” message is received from the tape drive. This code is not reported to the host server.

** This code is preserved only in the library log. This code is not reported to the host server.

---

### Tape drive sense data

#### Table 29. Ultrium Tape drive sense data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Byte</th>
<th>Bit Address or Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Valid Address Bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Segment Number x'00'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Filemark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ILI (Incorrec t length indicator)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sense Key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Information byte (most significant byte)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-5</td>
<td>Information bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Information byte (least significant byte)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Additional sense length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-11</td>
<td>Command specific information bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-13</td>
<td>For Ultrium Tape drive sense data for Bytes 12 and 13, see Table 30 on page 143.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Field Replaceable Unit (FRU) ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>SKSV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16-17</td>
<td>SKSV =0: First Error Fault Symptom Code (FSC); SKSV = 1: Field Pointer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18-19</td>
<td>First Error Flag Data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22-28</td>
<td>Current Wrap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30-33</td>
<td>Relative LPOS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 29. Ultrium Tape drive sense data (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Byte</th>
<th>Bit Address or Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>SCSI Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Frame number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-39</td>
<td>Drive number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Port Identifier (Relative Target Port Address) Reporting Sense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This is the hashed SAS address of the drive port (for example, F32A94) with byte 36 being reserved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Relative Target Port Reporting Sense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0: Reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1: Relative Target Port 1 (Port 0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2: Relative Target Port 2 (Port 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3: Relative Target Port 3 (Library Port)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Host Command (SCSI Opcode)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Density Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0: No media present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1: Gen1 (384 track)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2: Gen2 (512 track)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3: Gen3 (704 track)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43-44</td>
<td>Media Type (Vendor Reserved)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45-48</td>
<td>Logical Block Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Current LBA that would be reported in Read Position command)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49-52</td>
<td>Volume Label Cartridge Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53-54</td>
<td>Data Set Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55-56</td>
<td>1st Error FSC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57-58</td>
<td>1st Error Flag Data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59-60</td>
<td>2nd Error FSC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61-62</td>
<td>2nd Error Flag Data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63-64</td>
<td>Next-to-Last Error FSC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65-66</td>
<td>Next-to-Last Error Flag Data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67-68</td>
<td>Last Error FSC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>Last Error Flag Data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70-85</td>
<td>ERP Summary Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86-89</td>
<td>Product Revision Label: YMDV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(As defined in Standard Inquiry; this is also known as the Code Level)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 29. Ultrium Tape drive sense data (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Byte</th>
<th>Bit Address or Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>90-95</td>
<td>Reserved (0)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 30. Ultrium Tape drive sense data - Bytes 12 and 13

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Byte 12 ASC</th>
<th>Byte 13 ASCQ</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>00</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>No additional sense - The flags in the sense data indicate the reason for the command failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>00</td>
<td>01</td>
<td>Filemark detected - A Read or Space command terminated early due to an FM. The FM flag is set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>00</td>
<td>02</td>
<td>EOM - A Write or Write File Marks command failed because the physical end of tape was encountered, or a Read or Space command encountered EOM. The EOM flag is set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>00</td>
<td>04</td>
<td>BOM - A space command ended at Beginning of Tape. The EOM bit is also set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>00</td>
<td>05</td>
<td>EOD - Read or Space command terminated early because End of Data was encountered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Cause not reportable - A cartridge is present in the drive, but it is in the process of being unloaded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04</td>
<td>01</td>
<td>Becoming Ready - A media access command was received during a front panel initiated load or an immediate reported load command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04</td>
<td>02</td>
<td>Initializing Command Required - A cartridge is present in the drive, but is not logically loaded. A Load command is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04</td>
<td>03</td>
<td>Manual Intervention Required - A cartridge is present in the drive but could not be loaded or unloaded without manual intervention.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0C</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Write Error - A Write operation has failed. This is probably due to bad media, but may be hardware related.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Unrecovered Read Error - A Read operation failed. This is probably due to bad media, but may be hardware related.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Auxiliary memory read error. The drive reported that it is unable to read the Auxiliary Memory in a WORM cartridge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Recorded Entity Not Found - A space or Locate command failed because a format violation prevented the target from being found.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>03</td>
<td>End Of Data not found - A Read type operation failed because a format violation related to a missing EOD data set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Not Ready - Auxiliary memory not accessible. The drive is not able to become ready because it is unable to access the Auxiliary Memory in a WORM cartridge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1A</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Parameter list length error - The amount of parameter data sent is incorrect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Invalid Command Operation Code - The Operation Code in the command was not a valid Operation Code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Invalid field in CDB - An invalid field has been detected in a Command Descriptor Block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Byte 12 ASC</td>
<td>Byte 13 ASCQ</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>LUN not supported - The command was addressed to a non-existent logical unit number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Invalid Field in Parameter List - An invalid field has been detected in the data sent during the data phase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Write Protect - A Write type operation has been requested on a cartridge which has been write protected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Not Ready to Ready Transition - A cartridge has been loaded successfully into the drive and is now ready to be accessed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Reset - The drive has powered on, received a reset signal or a bus device reset signal since the initiator last accessed it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A</td>
<td>01</td>
<td>Mode Parameters Changed - The Mode parameters for the drive have been changed by an initiator other than the one issuing the command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Incompatible Media Installed - A write type operation could not be executed because it is not supported on the cartridge type that is loaded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>01</td>
<td>Unknown Format - An operation could not be carried out because the cartridge in the drive is of a format not supported by the drive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>02</td>
<td>Incompatible Format - An operation could not be completed because the Logical Format is not correct.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>03</td>
<td>Cleaning Cartridge Installed - An operation could not be carried out because the cartridge in the drive is a cleaning cartridge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>07</td>
<td>Cleaning Failure - A cleaning operation was attempted, but could not be completed for some reason.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>0C</td>
<td>Data Protect - WORM overwrite attempted. The drive rejected a write operation because it would have resulted in an overwrite. Overwrite is not allowed on WORM media.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>0D</td>
<td>Medium Error - WORM integrity check. The drive rejected a Read or Write operation because the cartridge is a suspicious WORM cartridge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Media format corrupted - Data could not be read because the format on tape is not valid, but is a known format. A failure occurred attempting to write the FID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Rounded parameter - A Mode Select command parameter has been rounded because the drive can not store it with the accuracy of the command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3A</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Media Not Present - A media access command has been received when there is no cartridge loaded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3B</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Sequential Positioning Error - A command has failed and left the logical position at an unexpected location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3D</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Invalid bits in identify Message - An illegal Identify Message has been received at the drive at the start of a command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3E</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Logical Unit has not Self-Configured - The drive has just powered on and has not completed its self test sequence and can not process commands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3F</td>
<td>01</td>
<td>Code Download - The firmware in the drive has just been changed by a Write Buffer command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>xx</td>
<td>Diagnostic failure - A diagnostic test has failed. The xx (ASCQ) is a vendor specific code indicating the failing component.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Byte 12 ASC</td>
<td>Byte 13 ASCQ</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Message Error - A message could not be sent or received due to excessive transmission errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Internal target failure - A hardware failure has been detected in the drive that has caused the command to fail.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Select/Reset Failure - An attempt to reselect an initiator in order to complete the command has failed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4B</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Data Phase Error - A command could not be completed because too many parity errors occurred during the Data phase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4E</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Overlapped Commands - An initiator selected the drive even though it already had a command outstanding in the drive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Write Append Error - A write type command failed because the point at which to append data was unreadable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Erase failure - An Erase command failed to erase the required area on the media.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Cartridge fault - A command could not be completed due to a fault in the tape cartridge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Media Load/Eject Failed - (Sense Key 03) An attempt to load or eject the cartridge failed due to a problem with the cartridge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Media Load/Eject Failed - (Sense Key 04) An attempt to load or eject the cartridge failed due to a problem with the drive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>02</td>
<td>Media Removal Prevented - An Unload command has failed to eject the cartridge because media removal has been prevented.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5D</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>Failure Prediction Threshold - Failure Prediction thresholds have been exceeded indicating that a failure may occur soon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5D</td>
<td>FF</td>
<td>Failure Prediction False - A Mode Select command has been used to test for Failure Prediction system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>Drive requires cleaning - The drive has detected that a cleaning operation is required to maintain good operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>Bad Code Detected - The data transferred to the drive during a firmware upgrade is corrupt or incompatible with drive hardware.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sense Key 0 (No Sense)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sense Key</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EE</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>Encryption - Key Translate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EF</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>Encryption - Key Translate EKM</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sense Key 3 (Medium Error)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sense Key</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>02</td>
<td>Encryption - Encryption feature is not enabled so format/processing is not supported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EE</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>Encryption - Encryption - Key Translation Failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EE</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>Encryption - Proxy Command Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EE</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>Encryption - Data Read Decryption Failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EE</td>
<td>D0</td>
<td>Encryption - Data Read after Write Decryption Failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EE</td>
<td>D1</td>
<td>Encryption - Key Translation Failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EE</td>
<td>E0</td>
<td>Encryption - Key Translation Ambiguous</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 30. Ultrium Tape drive sense data - Bytes 12 and 13 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Byte 12 ASC</th>
<th>Byte 13 ASCQ</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EE</td>
<td>F0</td>
<td>Encryption - Decryption Fenced (Read)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EE</td>
<td>F1</td>
<td>Encryption - Encryption Fenced (Write)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sense Key 4 (Hardware Error)**

| EE | 0E | Encryption - Key Service Timeout                  |
| EE | 0F | Encryption - Key Service Failure                   |
| 40 | 00 | Encryption - Failure Hardware, POST or Module Failure|

**Sense Key 5 (Illegal Request)**

<p>| EE | 00 | Encryption - Key Service Not Enabled              |
| EE | 01 | Encryption - Key Service Not Configured            |
| EE | 02 | Encryption - Key Service Not Available             |
| EE | 10 | Encryption - Key Required                          |
| EE | 20 | Encryption - Key Count Exceeded                    |
| EE | 21 | Encryption - Key Alias Exceeded                    |
| EE | 22 | Encryption - Key Reserved                          |
| EE | 23 | Encryption - Key Conflict                          |
| EE | 24 | Encryption - Key Method Change                     |
| EE | 25 | Encryption - Key Format Not Supported              |
| EE | 26 | Encryption - Unauthorized Request - dAK            |
| EE | 27 | Encryption - Unauthorized Request - dSK            |
| EE | 28 | Encryption - Unauthorized Request - eAK            |
| EE | 29 | Encryption - Authentication Failure                |
| EE | 2A | Encryption - Invalid RDKi                          |
| EE | 2B | Encryption - Key Incorrect                         |
| EE | 2C | Encryption - Key Wrapping Failure                  |
| EE | 2D | Encryption - Sequencing Failure                    |
| EE | 2E | Encryption - Unsupported Type                      |
| EE | 2F | Encryption - New Key Encrypted Write Pending       |
| EE | 30 | Encryption - Prohibited Request                    |
| EE | 31 | Encryption - Key Unknown                           |
| EE | 32 | Encryption - Keystore Related Problem              |
| EE | 42 | Encryption - EKM Challenge Pending                 |
| EE | E2 | Encryption - Key Translation Disallowed            |
| EE | FF | Encryption - Security Prohibited Function          |
| EF | 01 | Encryption - Key Service Not Configured            |
| 26 | 11 | Encryption - Incomplete Key - Associate Data Set    |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Byte 12 ASC</th>
<th>Byte 13 ASCQ</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Encryption (T10) - Vendor Specific Reference Key Not Found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>08</td>
<td>Encryption (T10) - Maximum Number of Supplemental Keys Exceeded</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sense Key 6 (Unit Attention)**

- EE 12 Encryption - Key Change Detected
- EE 18 Encryption - Changed (Read)
- EE 19 Encryption - Changed (Write)
- EE 40 Encryption - EKM Identifier Changed
- EE 41 Encryption - EKM Challenge Changed
- EE 50 Encryption - Initiator Identifier Changed
- EE 51 Encryption - Initiator Response Changed
- 2A 11 Encryption - Data Encryption Parameters Changed by Another I_T Nexus
- 2A 12 Encryption - Data Encryption Parameters Changed by Vendor Specific Event

**Sense Key 7 (Data Protect)**

- EF 10 Encryption - Key Required
- EF 11 Encryption - Key Generation
- EF 13 Encryption - Key Translate
- EF 1A Encryption - Key Optional
- EF C0 Encryption - No Operation
- 26 10 Encryption - Data Decryption Key Fail Limit
- 2A 13 Encryption - Data Encryption Key Instance Counter Changed
- 74 00 Security Error
- 74 01 Encryption - Unable to Decrypt Data
- 74 02 Encryption - Unencrypted Data Encountered While Decrypting
- 74 03 Encryption - Incorrect Data Encryption Key
- 74 04 Encryption - Cryptographic Integrity Validation Failed
- 74 05 Encryption - Error Decrypting Data

The descriptions below serve only as an overview of sense reporting in the tape drive. This tape drive conforms to all sense field reporting as specified in the SCSI standards.

1. The Error Code field (Byte 0) is set to 70h to indicate a current error, that is one associated with the most recently received command. It is set to 71h to indicate a deferred error which is not associated with the current command.

2. The segment number (Byte 1) is zero since the Copy, Compare, and Copy and Verify commands are not supported.

3. The File Mark flag (Byte 2, bit 7) is set if a Space, Read, or Verify command did not complete because a file mark was read.

4. The End of Media (EOM) flag (Byte 2, bit 6) is set if a Write or Write File Marks command completed in the early warning area. Spacing into BOM also causes this flag to be set. It is also set on an attempt to read or space past EOD, or if an attempt is made to space into Beginning of Media.
5. The Illegal Length Indicator (ILI) flag (Byte 2, bit 5) is set if a Read or Verify ended because a block was read from tape that did not have the block length requested in the command.

6. The Information Bytes (Bytes 3-5) are only valid if the Valid flag is set. This occurs only for current errors and not for deferred errors.

7. The Field Replaceable Unit field (Byte 14) is set to either zero or to a non-zero, vendor-specific code indicating which part of the drive is suspected of causing the failure.

8. The Clean (CLN) flag (Byte 21, bit 3) is set if the drive needs cleaning and clear otherwise.

9. The Volume Label Fields Valid (VolValid) bit (Byte 21, bit 0) is set if the Volume Label being reported is valid.

10. The Volume Label field (Bytes 22-28) reports the volume label if a cartridge is loaded in the drive and Volume Label Fields Valid is set.

11. The Current Wrap field (Byte 29) reports the physical wrap of the tape. The least significant bit reflects the current physical direction. A0h means that the current direction is away from the physical beginning of the tape. A1h means that the current direction is towards the physical beginning of the tape.

12. Relative LPOS fields (Bytes 30-33) reports the current physical position on the tape.

13. SCSI Address field (Byte 34) reports the SCSI Bus Address for the drive. Values returned range from 00h to 0Fh.

14. This field (Byte 35) contains the frame and drive number, passed across the RS-422 serial interface.
Appendix D. Library Configuration Form

Make a copy of this form, fill it out as you are installing and configuring your library. Update the form each time changes are made to the library. The information that is contained on this form is important, and helpful if a call to Dell service is necessary. Store this form in a secure location.

### Physical Library

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Machine type</th>
<th>TL1000</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Serial Number</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library Name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Cleaning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bar code label length</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Logical Library

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Library Access Mode</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Loop</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autoload</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active Slots</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Tape Drive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Serial Number</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Worldwide Node Name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Network Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ethernet Link Speed</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SSL Security</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Static IP address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subnet Mask Address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gateway Address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stateless Auto Configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Static IP address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prefix Length</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gateway</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNS IP address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTP Date/Time Server</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTP Server IP address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Zone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Adjustment by PC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMTP (Mail) Server</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMTP Server Address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sender Address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail to 01</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail to 02</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail to 03</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail to 04</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail Event Level</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNMP Server</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trap to 01</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trap to 02</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trap to 03</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trap to 04</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trap Event Level</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Library and Drive Firmware

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Firmware</th>
<th>Current Firmware Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Library</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

User Accounts

The Administrator (admin) password is listed in the Table 31 on page 151 table. Modify and add extra Administrator, Superuser, Service, and User names and passwords that are created. User names and passwords are case-sensitive.

Table 31. User Accounts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User name</th>
<th>Access Level</th>
<th>Password</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>admin</td>
<td>Administrator</td>
<td>secure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Support Notification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User name</th>
<th>Password</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Appendix E. Accessibility

Accessibility features help a user with a physical disability, such as restricted mobility or limited vision, successfully use the HTML version of the customer documentation.

Features

These are the major accessibility features for the HTML version of the *Dell PowerVault TL1000 Tape Autoloader User’s Guide*.

- You can use screen-reader software and a digital speech synthesizer to hear what is displayed on the screen. The following screen readers are tested: WebKing and Window-Eyes.
- You can operate all features with the keyboard instead of the mouse.

Navigate by keyboard

You can use keys or key combinations to perform operations and initiate many menu actions that can also be done through mouse actions. You can navigate the HTML version of the *Dell PowerVault TL1000 Tape Autoloader User’s Guide* help system from the keyboard. Use the following keyboard combinations:

- `http://www.dell.com/support`
- To traverse to the next link, button, or topic, press **Tab** inside a frame (page).
- To move to the previous topic, press `^` or Shift+Tab.
- To scroll all the way up or down, press **Home** or **End**.
- To print the current page or active frame, press Ctrl+P.
- To select, press **Enter**.

Access the publications

You can view the publications for this library in Adobe Portable Document Format (PDF) with the Adobe Acrobat Reader. The PDFs are provided at the following website: [http://www.dell.com/support](http://www.dell.com/support).
This glossary defines the special terms, abbreviations, and acronyms that are used in this publication. If you do not find the term that you are looking for, refer to the index or to the Dictionary of Computing, 1994.

**Numbers**

**2:1 compression**
The relationship between the quantity of data that can be stored with compression as compared to the quantity of data that can be stored without compression. In 2:1 compression, twice as much data can be stored with compression as can be stored without compression.

**A**
Ampere.

**ac**
Alternating current.

**access method**
A technique for moving data between main storage and input or output devices.

**accessor**
This component contains the library robot and bar code reader. The accessor moves cartridges to and from the I/O station, storage slots, and tape drives.

**adapter card**
A circuit board that adds function to a computer.

**adj**
Adjustment.

**Administrator**
The Administrator role has access to all menus. The default password is **secure**, and the default PIN is **0000**.

**AES**
Advanced Encryption Standard. A data encryption technique that improved upon and officially replaced the Data Encryption Standard (DES).

**AH**
Authentication Header. An Internet Protocol intended to guarantee connectionless integrity and data origin authentication of IP datagrams. Further, it can optionally protect against replay attacks by using the sliding window technique and discarding old packets.

**AIX**
Advanced Interactive Executive. IBM’s implementation of the UNIX operating system. The System p system, among others, uses AIX as its operating system.

**alphanumeric**
Pertaining to a character set that contains letters, numerals, and other characters, such as punctuation marks.

**alter**
To change.

**ambient temperature**
The temperature of air or other media in a designated area, particularly the area that is surrounding equipment.
AME
Application Managed Encryption.

ampere (A)
A unit of measure for electric current that is equivalent to a flow of 1 coulomb per second, or to the current produced by 1 volt applied across a resistance of 1 ohm.

ANSI
American National Standards Institute.

application-managed encryption
Tape encryption that is controlled by an application.

archive
To collect and store files in a designated place.

ASCII
American National Standard Code for Information Interchange. A 7 bit coded character set (8 bits including parity check) that consists of control characters and graphic characters.

assigning a device
The establishing of the relationship of a device to a running task, process, job, or program.

assignment
The naming of a specific device to perform a function.

asynchronous
Pertaining to two or more processes that do not depend upon the occurrence of specific events such as common timing signals.

attention (notice)
A word for calling attention to the possibility of danger to a program, device, or system, or to data. Contrast with caution and danger.

ATTN
Attention.

B
backup
To make extra copies of documents or software for safekeeping.

bar code
A code that represents characters by sets of parallel bars of varying thickness and separation, which are read optically by transverse scanning.

bar code label
Paper bearing a bar code and having an adhesive backing. The bar code label must be affixed to a tape cartridge to enable the library to identify the cartridge and its volume serial number.

bar code reader
A laser device that is specialized for scanning and reading bar codes and converting them into either the ASCII or EBCDIC digital character code.

bezel
Decorative and safety cover.

bicolored
Having two colors.

bit
Either of the digits 0 or 1 when used in the binary numbering system.

BOM or bill of materials
A list of specific types and amounts of direct materials that are expected to be used to produce a specific job or quantity of output.
Border Gateway Protocol (BGP)
BGP is the core routing protocol of the Internet. It works by maintaining a table of IP networks or ‘prefixes’ that designate network reachability among autonomous systems (AS).

BRMS
Backup Recovery and Media Services.

browser
A client program that initiates requests to a web server and displays the information that the server returns.

buffer
A routine or storage that is used to compensate for a difference in rate of flow of data or time of occurrence of events, when data is transferred from one device to another.

bus
A facility for transferring data between several devices that are located between two end points, only one device able to transmit at a specified moment.

byte
A string that consists of some bits (usually 8) that are treated as a unit and represent a character. A fundamental data unit.

C

CA certification
In cryptography, a certificate from a certificate authority (CA).

capacity
The amount of data that can be contained on storage media and expressed in bytes of data.

cartridge manual rewind tool
A device that can be fitted into the reel of a cartridge and used to rewind tape into or out of the cartridge.

cartridge memory (CM)
Within each data cartridge, an embedded electronics and interface module that can store and retrieve a cartridge's historical usage and other information.

cartridge storage slot
Individual slot that is located within a magazine that is used to house tape cartridges.

cautions (notice)
A word to call attention to possible personal harm to people. Contrast with attention and danger.

CE
Customer engineer; field engineer; service representative.

centimeter (cm)
One one-hundredth of a meter (0.01 m). Approximately 0.39 inch.

channel command
An instruction that directs a data channel, control unit, or device to perform an operation or set of operations.

char
Character.

CHK
Check.

cleaning cartridge
A tape cartridge that is used to clean the heads of a tape drive. Contrast with data cartridge.

COD
Capacity On Demand.
command
A control signal that initiates an action or the start of a sequence of actions.

compact disc (CD)
A disc, usually 4.75 inches in diameter, from which data is read optically by using a laser.

compression
The process of eliminating gaps, empty fields, redundancies, and unnecessary data to shorten the length of records or blocks.

concurrent
Refers to diagnostic procedures that can be run on one control unit while the rest of the subsystem remains available for customer applications.

contingent connection
A connection between a channel path and a drive that is caused when a unit check occurs during an I/O operation.

controller
A device that provides the interface between a system and one or more tape drives.

control path drive
A drive that communicates messages from the host computer to the library in which the drive is installed.

cookie
A packet of data that is exchanged between the library and a web browser to track configuration.

CP
Circuit protector.

CPF
Control Path Failover.

CRU
Customer Replaceable Unit.

CSA
Canadian Standards Association.

cm
Control.

CU
Control unit.

D
danger (notice)
A word to call attention to possible lethal harm to people. Contrast with attention and caution.

data
Any representations such as characters or analog quantities to which meaning is or might be assigned.

data buffer
The storage buffer in the control unit. This buffer is used to increase the data transfer rate between the control unit and the channel.

data cartridge
A tape cartridge that is dedicated to storing data. Contrast with cleaning cartridge.

data check
A synchronous or asynchronous indication of a condition that is caused by invalid data or incorrect positioning of data.

dc
Direct current.
DCS
Designated Cleaning Slot.

degauss
To make a magnetic tape nonmagnetic by using electrical coils that carry currents that neutralize the magnetism of the tape.

degausser
A device that makes magnetic tape nonmagnetic.

degradation
A decrease in quality of output or throughput or an increase in machine error rate.

degraded
Decreased in quality of output or throughput or increased machine error rate.

DES
Data Encryption Standard. A cryptographic algorithm designed to encrypt and decrypt data using a private key.

deserialize
To change from serial-by-bit to parallel-by-byte.

detented
A part that is held in position with a catch or lever.

device
Any hardware component or peripheral device, such as a tape drive or tape library, that can receive and send data.

device driver
A file that contains the code that is needed to use an attached device.

DHCPv6
The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6. Although IPv6’s stateless address autoconfiguration removes the primary motivation for DHCP in IPv4, DHCPv6 can still be used to statefully assign addresses if the network administrator wants more control over addressing.

DH group
Diffie-Hellman group.

DIAG
Diagnostic section of maintenance information manual.

differential
See High Voltage Differential (HVD).

direct access storage
A storage device in which the access time is independent of the location of the data.

display contrast
The brightness of the display on the Operator Panel.

DLL
Dynamic Link Library. The Microsoft implementation of the shared library concept. These libraries usually have the file extension dll, ocs (for libraries that contain activeX controls, or drv (for legacy system drivers).

DNS
Directory Name System. This allows the library to recognize text-based addresses instead of numeric IP addresses.

download
To transfer programs or data from a computer to a connected device, typically a personal computer.
To transfer data from a computer to a connected device, such as a workstation or personal computer.

DPF
Data Path Failover.

DRAM
Dynamic random-access memory.
**drive, magnetic tape**
A mechanism for moving magnetic tape and controlling its movement.

**Drive Not Configured**
This message occurs during the first boot after a factory settings restore is run. This message is not a real issue since it takes time for the library to configure.

**DRV**
Drive.

**DSA key**
Encryption key type.

**DSE**
Data security erase.

**DSP**
Digital signal processor.

**E**

**EBCDIC**
Extended binary-coded decimal interchange code.

**EC**
Edge connector. Engineering change.

**ECC**
Error correction code.

**EEB**
Ethernet Expansion Blade

**EEPROM**
Electrically erasable programmable read-only memory.

**EIA**
Electronics Industries Association.

**EIA unit**
A unit of measure, which is established by the Electronic Industries Association, equal to 44.45 millimeters (1.75 inches).

**eject**
To remove or force out from within.

**EKM**
Encryption Key Manager.

**electronic mail**
Correspondence in the form of messages that are transmitted between user terminals over a computer network.

**email**
See electronic mail.

**encryption**
A method of storing data in a format that helps protect data from inadvertent or deliberate compromise. An encryption-enabled drive contains the necessary hardware and firmware to encrypt and decrypt host tape application data. Encryption policy and encryption keys are provided by the host application or host server.

**encryption key manager (EKM)**
A Java™ software program that assists encrypting tape drives in generating, protecting, storing, and maintaining encryption keys that encrypt information that is written to and decrypt information that is read from tape media.
entitlement
Entitlement is the official right to receive service and support for your tape library.

EPO
Emergency power off.

EPROM
Erasable programmable read only memory.

EQC
Equipment check.

equipment check
An asynchronous indication of a malfunction.

Error log
A data set or file in a product or system where error information is stored for later access.

ESD
Electrostatic discharge.

ESP
Encapsulating Security Payload. An Internet Protocol that provides origin authenticity, integrity, and confidentiality protection of a packet. ESP also supports encryption-only and authentication-only configurations, but encryption without authentication is discouraged because it is insecure.

F
fault symptom code (FSC)
A hexadecimal code that is generated by the drive or the control unit microcode in response to a detected subsystem error.

FC
Feature code.

FCC
Federal communications commission.

FE
Field engineer, customer engineer, or service representative.

fiducial
A target that is used for teaching a physical location to a robot.

field replaceable unit (FRU)
An assembly that is replaced in its entirety when any one of its components fails.

file
A named set of records that are stored or processed as a unit. Also referred to as a data set.

file protection
The processes and procedures that are established in an information system that are designed to inhibit unauthorized access to, contamination of, or deletion of a file.

file transfer protocol (FTP)
In the Internet suite of protocols, an application layer protocol that uses TCP and Telnet services to transfer bulk-data files between machines or hosts.

firmware
Proprietary code that is delivered as microcode as part of an operating system. Firmware is more efficient than software loaded from an alterable medium and more adaptable to change than pure hardware circuitry. An example of firmware is the Basic input/output system (BIOS) in read-only memory (ROM) on a PC system board.

FLASH EEPROM
An electrically erasable programmable read-only memory (EEPROM) that can be updated.
FMR
Field microcode replacement.

format
The arrangement or layout of data on a data medium.

formatter
Part of a magnetic tape subsystem that performs data conversion, speed matching, encoding, first level error recovery, and interfaces to one or more tape drives.

FP
File protect.

frayed
Damaged as if by an abrasive substance.

FRU
Field replaceable unit.

FSC
Fault symptom code.

FSI
Fault symptom index.

FTSS
Field Technical Sales Support.

functional microcode
Microcode that is resident in the machine during normal customer operation.

G
g
Gram.

GB
gigabyte.

GBIC
Gigabit Interface Converter.

Gbs
gigabits/second

Gbi
gigabit

gigabit (Gbit)
1 000 000 000 bits.

gigabyte (GB)
1 000 000 000 bytes.

Gigabit Interface Converter (GBIC)
Converts copper interface to optic interface.

gnd
Ground.

H
HBA
Host Bus Adapter.

HD Slot Technology
High-density (HD) slot technology. Allows multiple cartridges to be stored in a tiered architecture.
hertz (Hz)
Unit of frequency. 1 hertz equals one cycle per second.

hex
Hexadecimal.

High Voltage Differential (HVD)
A logic signaling system that enables data communication between a supported host and the library. HVD signaling uses a paired plus and minus signal level to reduce the effects of noise on the SCSI bus. Any noise that is injected into the signal is present in both a plus and minus state, and is canceled. Synonymous with differential.

HVD
SCSI Bus High Voltage Differential

Hz
Hertz (cycles per second).

I

ID
Identifier.

identifier (ID)
(1) In programming languages, a lexical unit that names a language object; for example, the names of variables, arrays, records, labels, or procedures. An identifier usually consists of a letter optionally followed by letters, digits, or other characters. (2) One or more characters that are used to identify or name data element and possibly to indicate certain properties of that data element. (3) A sequence of bits or characters that identifies a program, device, or system to another program, device, or system.

IEC
International Electrotechnical Commission.

IKE
Internet Key Exchange that is used in the IPsec protocol.

IML
Initial microprogram load.

incompatible magazine
This message might display on the Operator Panel during library initialization. It occurs during factory restore or VPD. This message is not a real issue since it takes time for the library to configure.

initial microprogram load (IML)
The action of loading a microprogram from an external storage to writable control storage.

initiator
The component that runs a command. The initiator can be the host system or the tape control unit.

INST
Installation.

interface
A shared boundary. An interface might be a hardware component to link two devices or it might be a portion of storage or registers accessed by two or more computer programs.

Internet Protocol Version 4 (IPv4)
See IPv4.

Internet Protocol Version 6 (IPv6)
See IPv6.

interposer
The part that is used to convert a 68-pin connector to a 50-pin D-shell connector.

intervention required
Manual action is needed.
INTRO
Introduction.

I/O
Input/output.

I/O station
Cartridge location that is dedicated for the insertion of cartridges into and the removal of cartridges from the library.

IOP
Input/output processor.

IP
Internet Protocol.

IP address
An identifier for a computer or device on an Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) network. Networks that use the TCP/IP protocol route messages that are based on the IP address of the destination. See IPv4 and IPv6.

IPL
Initial program load.

IPSec (IP security)
A set of protocols for securing IPv6 network communications by authentication and encryption.

IP Stack
A TCP/IP protocol stack that manages static IP addresses.

IPv4
A network layer protocol for packet-switched networks. IPv4 supports $2^{32}$ (about 4.3 billion) addresses.

IPv6
A network layer protocol for packet-switched networks. It is the designated successor of IPv4 for general use on the Internet. The main improvement that is brought by IPv6 is the increase in the number of addresses available for networked devices, allowing, for example, each mobile phone and mobile electronic device to have its own unique address.

ISV
Independent software vendor.

ITST
Idle-time self-test.

K
Kerberos
Kerberos Authentication is a standard (RFC 1510) third-party authentication protocol that provides end-to-end security for distributed computing environments.

kilogram (kg)
1000 grams (approximately 2.2 pounds).

km
kilometer. 1000 Meters, Approximately 5/8 mile.

L
LAN
Local area network. A computer network within a limited area.

LCB
Library Control Blade
LCD
See liquid crystal display.

LDAP
Lightweight Directory Access Protocol. This allows the library to use login and password information that is stored on a server to grant access to the library functionality.

LDAPS
Secure LDAP over SSL.

LDI
Library Drive Interface.

LED
Light-emitting diode.

library certification
In cryptography, a certificate that is provided by the library.

library-managed encryption
Tape encryption that is controlled by the tape library.

Linear Tape-Open (LTO)
A type of tape storage technology that is developed by the IBM Corporation, Hewlett-Packard, and Quantum. LTO technology is an “open format” technology, which means that its users have multiple sources of product and media. The “open” nature of LTO technology enables compatibility between different vendors' offerings by ensuring that vendors comply with verification standards. The LTO technology is implemented in two formats: the Accelis format focuses on fast access; the Ultrium format focuses on high capacity. The Ultrium format is the preferred format when capacity (rather than fast access) is the key storage consideration. An Ultrium cartridge has a compressed data capacity of up to 15 TB (2.5:1 compression) and a native data capacity of up to 6 TB.

liquid crystal display (LCD)
A low-power display technology that is used in computers and other I/O devices.

loadable
The ability to be loaded.

LME
Library Managed Encryption.

LTO cartridge memory (LTO-CM)
Within each LTO Ultrium data cartridge, an embedded electronics and interface module that can store and retrieve a cartridge’s historical usage and other information.

LUN
Logical Unit Number.

LVD
SCSI Bus Low Voltage Differential

M

MAC address
The Media Access Control address of a computer networking device.

magnetic tape
A tape with a magnetic surface layer on which data can be stored by magnetic recording.

MAP
Maintenance analysis procedure.

mask
A pattern of characters that controls the retention or elimination of portions of another pattern of characters. To use a pattern of characters to control the retention or elimination of portions of another pattern of characters.
master file
A file that is used as an authority in a job and that is relatively permanent, even though its contents might change. Synonymous with main file.

Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU)
The size of the largest packet that a network protocol can transmit.

MB
Megabyte (expressed as data rate in MB/s or MB/second).

media capacity
The amount of data that can be contained on a storage medium, expressed in bytes of data.

media-type identifier
Pertaining to the bar code on the bar code label of the Ultrium Tape Cartridge, a 2-character code, L1, that represents information about the cartridge. L identifies the cartridge as one that can be read by devices that incorporate LTO technology; 1 indicates that it is the first generation of its type.

mega
One million of.

meter
In the Metric System, the basic unit of length; equal to approximately 39.37 inches.

MIB
Management Information Base. Information repository that is used by SNMP.

micro
One millionth of.

microcode
(1) One or more micro instructions. (2) A code, representing the instructions of an instruction set, which is implemented in a part of storage that is not program-addressable. (3) To design, write, and test one or more micro instructions. (4) See also microprogram.

microdiagnostic routine
A program that runs under the control of a supervisor, usually to identify field replaceable units.

microdiagnostic utility
A program that is run by the customer engineer to test the machine.

microinstruction
A basic or elementary machine instruction.

microprogram
A group of microinstructions that when run performs a planned function.

The term microprogram represents a dynamic arrangement or selection of one or more groups of microinstructions for execution to perform a particular function. The term microcode represents microinstructions that are used in a product as an alternative to hard-wired circuitry to implement certain functions of a processor or other system component.

MIM
Media information message.

mm
Millimeter.

modifier
That which changes the meaning.

mount a device
To assign an I/O device with a request to the operator.

MP
Microprocessor.

ms
Millisecond.
MSG
Message.

multipath
Pertaining to using more than one path.

N
N/A
Not applicable.

Network Address Translation (NAT)
NAT involves rewriting the source or destination addresses of IP packets as they pass through a router or firewall. Most systems that use NAT do so to enable multiple hosts on a private network to access the Internet over a single public IP address.

NEMA
National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

node
In a network, a point at which one or more functional units connect channels or data circuits.

NTP
Network Time Protocol. This protocol allows the library to set its internal date and time that is based on the date and time of a server.

NVS
Nonvolatile storage. A storage device whose contents are not lost when power is cut off.

O
oersted
The unit of magnetic field strength in the unrationalized centimeter-gram-second (cgs) electromagnetic system. The oersted is the magnetic field strength in the interior of an elongated, uniformly wound solenoid that is excited with a linear current density in its winding of 1 abampere per 4π centimeters of axial length.

offline
Pertaining to the operation of a functional unit without the continual control of a computer. Contrast with online.

online
Pertaining to the operation of a functional unit that is under the continual control of a computer. Contrast with offline.

OPER
Operation.

ov
Over voltage.

overrun
Loss of data because a receiving device is unable to accept data at the rate it is transmitted.

overtightening
To tighten too much.

P
parameter
A variable that is given a constant value for a specified application and that might denote the application.
p bit
Parity bit.

PC
Parity check.

PCC
Power control compartment.

PDF
Portable Document Format.

PE
Parity error. Product engineer.

PFS
Perfect forward secrecy.

pick
Pertaining to the library, to remove, by using a robotic device, a tape cartridge from a storage slot or drive.

picker
A robotic mechanism that is located inside the library that moves cartridges between the cartridge storage slots and the drive.

PM
Preventive maintenance.

POR
Power-on reset.

port
A physical connection for communication between the 3590 and the host processor. The 3590 has 2 SCSI ports.

Portable Document Format (PDF)
A standard that is specified by Adobe Systems, Incorporated, for the electronic distribution of documents. PDF files are compact, can be distributed globally (by way of email, the web, intranets, or CD-ROM), and can be viewed with the Acrobat Reader, which is software from Adobe Systems that can be downloaded at no cost from the Adobe Systems home page.

Private key
A cryptographic key that is used to decrypt a message.

PROM
Programmable read only memory.

PS
Power supply.

PTF
Program temporary fix. A single bugfix or group of bugfixes that are distributed in a form ready to install for customers.

PWR
Power.

R
rack
A unit that houses the components of a storage subsystem, such as the library.

rackmount kit
A packaged collection of articles that are used to install the rack mounted version of the library.

RAM
Random access memory.
**Random access memory**
A storage device into which data is entered and from which data is retrieved in a nonsequential manner.

**RAS**
Reliability, availability, and serviceability.

**record**
A collection of related data or words, which are treated as a unit.

**recording density**
The number of bits in a single linear track measured per unit of length of the recording medium.

**recoverable error**
An error condition that allows continued execution of a program.

**ref**
Reference.

**reg**
Register.

**reinventory**
To inventory again.

**retension**
The process or function of tightening the tape onto the cartridge, if it is sensed that the tape has a loose wrap on the cartridge.

**RFC (Request for Comments)**
Request for Comments (RFC) documents are a series of memoranda, which encompasses new research, innovations, and methodologies applicable to Internet technologies.

**RH**
Relative humidity.

**RID tag**
Repair identification tag.

**RML**
Rack Mount Line.

**robot**
Picker.

**robotics**
Picker assembly.

**root CA certification**
In cryptography, a root certificate from a certificate authority (CA).

**RPQ**
Request for price quotation.

**RSA key**
Encryption key type.

**R/W**
read/write.

**S**

**s**
Seconds of time.

**SAC**
Service Action Code. Code that is developed to indicate possible FRU or FRUs to replace to repair the hardware.
SAN
Storage area network.

SAS
Serial Attached SCSI. A computer bus technology and serial communication protocol for direct attached storage devices. SAS is a replacement for parallel SCSI with higher speeds, but still utilizing SCSI commands.

scratch cartridge
A data cartridge that contains no useful data, but can be written to with new data.

SCD
Single Character Display.

SCSI
Small computer system interface.

SE
Single-ended.

segment
A part.

sel
Select.

Serial Attached SCSI (SAS)
A drive with a SAS interface can be linked directly to controllers. SAS is a performance improvement over traditional SCSI because SAS enables multiple devices (up to 128) of different sizes and types to be connected simultaneously with thinner and longer cables. It supports full-duplex signal transmission up to 3 Gb/s. In addition, SAS drives can be hot-plugged.

serialize
To change from parallel-by-byte to serial-by-bit.

serializer
A device that converts a space distribution of simultaneous states, which represents data into a corresponding time sequence of states.

servo, servos
An adjective for use in qualifying some part or aspect of a servomechanism.

servomechanism
A feedback control system in which at least one of the system signals represents mechanical motion.

signature
A digital signature that is used in cryptography to identify one party to ensure authenticity.

slot blocker
A slot blocker is used to restrict/close off a data cell so a data cartridge cannot be inserted.

Small Computer Systems Interface (SCSI)
A standard that is used by computer manufacturers for attaching peripheral devices (such as tape drives, hard disks, CD-ROM players, printers, and scanners) to computers (servers). Pronounced “scuzzy”. Variations of the SCSI interface provide for faster data transmission rates than standard serial and parallel ports (up to 320 megabytes per second). The variations include:

- Fast/Wide SCSI: Uses a 16-bit bus, and supports data rates of up to 20 MBps.
- SCSI-1: Uses an 8-bit bus, and supports data rates of 4 MBps.
- SCSI-2: Same as SCSI-1, but uses a 50-pin connector instead of a 25-pin connector, and supports multiple devices.
- Ultra SCSI: Uses an 8- or 16-bit bus, and supports data rates of 20 or 40 MBps.
- Ultra2 SCSI: Uses an 8- or 16-bit bus and supports data rates of 40 or 80 MBps.
- Ultra3 SCSI: Uses a 16-bit bus and supports data rates of 80 or 160 MBps.
- Ultra160 SCSI: Uses a 16-bit bus and supports data rates of 80 or 160 MBps.
- Ultra320 SCSI: Uses a 16-bit bus and supports data rates of 320 MBps.
SKLM (IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager)
IBM’s EKM application that assists encrypting tape drives in generating, protecting, storing, and maintaining encryption keys that encrypt information that is written to and decrypt information that is read from tape media.

SMI-S
See Storage Management Initiative Specification (SMI-S).

SMTP
Simple Mail Transfer Protocol. SMTP is a standard for email transmissions across the internet.

SMW
Servo Manufacturer's Word.

SNMP
Simple Network Management Protocol. SNMP is used by network management systems to monitor network-attached devices for conditions that warrant administrative attention.

SNTP
Simple Network Time Protocol. Used to synchronize the clocks of network-attached devices.

SNS
Sense.

special feature
A feature that can be ordered to enhance the capability, storage capacity, or performance of a product, but is not essential for its basic work.

SPI
Security Parameters Index.

SR
Service representative, see also CE.

SRAM
Static random access memory.

SS
Status store.

SSL (Secure Sockets Layer)
A set of cryptographic protocols for secure communications on the Internet for such things as web browsing, email, Internet faxing, instant messaging, and other data transfer. SSL allows applications to communicate across a network in a way that is designed to prevent eavesdropping, tampering, and message forgery.

SSP
Serial SCSI Protocol.

ST
Store.

standard feature
The significant design elements of a product that are included as part of the fundamental product.

START
Start maintenance.

StartTLS
Secure LDAP communication that uses TLS.

Storage Management Initiative Specification (SMI-S)
A storage standard that is developed and maintained by the Storage Networking Industry Association (SNIA). It is also ratified as an ISO standard. The main objective of SMI-S is to enable broad interoperable management of heterogeneous storage vendor systems.

subsystem
A secondary or subordinate system, capable of operating independently of, or asynchronously with, a controlling system.
**SUPP**
Support.

**sync**
Synchronous, synchronize. Occurring with a regular or predictable time relationship.

**T**

**tachometer, tach**
A device that emits pulses that are used to measure/check speed or distance.

**tape cartridge**
A container that holds magnetic tape, that can be processed without separating it from the container.

**tape void**
An area in the tape in which no signal can be detected.

**TB**
terabyte

**TCP/IP**

**TCU**
Tape control unit.

**TDT**
Tape Diagnostic tool.

**TH**
Thermal.

**thread/load operation**
A procedure that places tape along the tape path.

**TM**
Tapemark.

**transport mode**
End-to-end communications security in which the end-point computers do the security processing.

**trusted certification**
In cryptography, a trustworthy certificate that is not registered with a certificate authority.

**tunnel mode**
Port-to-port communications security in which security is provided to several machines by a single node.

**U**

**UART**
Universal asynchronous receiver/transmitter.

**UL**
Underwriter's Laboratories.

**Ultrim Tape Drive**
Located within the library, a data-storage device that controls the movement of the magnetic tape in an LTO Ultrim Tape Cartridge. The drive houses the mechanism (drive head) that reads and writes data to the tape.

**unload**
Prepare the tape cartridge for removal from the drive.

**utilities**
Utility programs.
utility programs
A computer program in general support of the processes of a computer; for instance, a diagnostic program.

uv
Under voltage.

V
VOLSER
Volume serial number.

volume
A certain portion of data, together with its data carrier, that can be handled conveniently as a unit.

VPD
Vital product data. The information that is contained within the tape drive that requires nonvolatile storage that is used by functional areas of the drive, and information that is required for manufacturing, RAS, and engineering.

W
word
A character string that is convenient for some purpose to consider as an entity.

World Wide Node Name (WWNN)
A unique character string which identifies Fibre Channel Host Bus adapters (HBA).

WORM
Write Once Read Many.

Write
Write command.

WT
World trade.

WWCID
Worldwide Cartridge Identifier.

WWN
Worldwide Name.

WWNN
Worldwide Node Name.

WWPN
Worldwide port name.

X
XR
External register.

XRA
External register address register.
Index

A
access mode
   library configuration 33
accessibility
   keyboard 152
   repeat rate of up and down buttons 152
   shortcut keys 152
accessor 90
accessor locking screw
   removing 28
   Accessor locking screw 5
accessor statistics, viewing 90
acclimation 22
account types 16
Acoustical specifications 10
active slots 33, 47, 58
address 36
administrator 71
application managed encryption 77
application managed encryption (AME) 37
Attention LED 13
authentication 39, 81
auto cleaning 33, 47
autotest 33, 47

B
back light 61
Bar code labels
   guidelines for using 96
Bar code reader 5

C
cables 110
cables, reseating 110
cartridge
   Write-Protect switch 97
Cartridge
   capacity scaling 91
   cleaning 95
   compatibility 93
   data 91
   M8 93
   proper handling 97
   specifications 100
   Type M 93
cartridge assignment 33
cartridge magazine 2, 3, 113
cartridge magazine, unlocking 70
cartridge magazines 55
Cartridge, environment 98
cartridges
   cleaning 8
CE log, dumping 88
certificate notifications 83
channel calibration 7
Clean Drive LED 13
cleaning 56
cleaning the drive 69
cold weather procedures 22
configuration
   Web User Interface 32
   configuring auto cleaning 58
   control keys 2

D
data cartridges 8
date and time settings 78
date settings 47, 60, 78
default settings 30, 62
device drivers, supported 12
DHCP 35, 46, 60
diagnosing problems 103
diagnostics 62, 63
display elements 16
DNS server IP address 35, 46
downloading drive logs 88
drive
   rebooting 58
drive cleaning 56
drive diagnostics 63
drive logs, downloading 88

E
EKM 37
electrical specifications 10
e-mail 38, 80
e-mail notifications 38, 80
emailing 110
e-mailing logs 110
emergency release 3
Encryption
   configuration 37
   encryption key manager 37
   Encryption Key Manager (EKM) 37
   encryption key manager configuration 37
   encryption policy 37, 77
   encryption settings 77
   environmental specifications 10
   error codes 115, 128
   Error LED 13
   error logs 102, 110
   error messages 102, 128
   error messages and resolutions 102
   error status 62
   ethernet port 5, 28
F
firmware 55
firmware, updating 89
frequency, electrical supply 10
front panel 2

G
gateway 35, 46, 60
glossary 153

H
hardware attributes, viewing 55
Host Bus Adapter (HBA) 9
host interface cable 28
Host interface cables, connecting 28

I
I/O station 47, 55
I/O Station, configuration 33
Input modes 13
installation
rack
safety xv
installation location 21, 22
installing rails 22
inventory 57, 70
IP address 35, 46, 60
IPv4 address 35, 46
IPv4 settings 61, 76
IPv6 address 35, 46
IPv6 prefix length 35, 46, 61, 76, 78
IPv6 settings 61, 76
ITDT-SE 111

J
Java 32

K
keyboard 152

L
labels
bar code 95
Labels
bar code
 guidelines for using 96
laser
 compliance xv
safety xv
LCD contrast 61, 78
LCD display 2
LEDs 108
LEDs, front panel 108
LEDs, interpreting 108
library
library (continued)
 auto cleaning 58
 configuring 30
 configuring active slots 58
 logging out 58
 powering down 57
 preparing to ship 57
 rebooting 58
Library 48
library access mode 33
library and drives, resetting 88
Library configuration
 save/restore 45
Library Configuration Form 149
library depth 10
library dimensions 10
library in rack 22
library inventory 70
library managed encryption 77
library managed encryption (LME) 37
library map 65
library mode 59
library settings 59
Library settings
 configuration 47
library state 70
library verify 62
Library verify
diagnostics 50
library verify diagnostic procedures 62
library weight 10
library width 10
library, diagnosing problems 103
library, viewing logs 87
link speed 35, 46, 76
link speed (ethernet) 35, 46, 60, 76
location 21
location in rack 22
logging out of the library 58
Logical Unit Number (LUN) scanning 9
login
 Web User Interface 32
logs, emailing 110
looping 33
looping access mode 47
LTO tape drives 7
LTO Type M data cartridge 93
LUN scanning 9

M
M8 data cartridge 93
maintenance 113
Media 8, 91
media errors 94
menus 16, 52, 64
mounting location, library 21
moving 56
moving cartridges 68

N
Network
Network configuration 35, 46
network settings 5, 76
Network settings 35, 46, 60
Network Time Protocol (NTP) 7
notification settings 38, 80
Notification settings 39, 81
notification settings, email 38, 80
NTP 7
NTP address 36, 78
NTP server configuration 36

O
offline 57
online 57
online or offline 70
online/offline icon 13
Operating procedures
 Operator Panel 52
operational specifications 10
Operator Panel
 current information 54
firmware revision 55
library inventory 57
manually cleaning the drive 56
menus 53
moving cartridges 56
taking the library online and offline 57
unloading the drive 56
unlocking cartridge magazine 55
unlocking I/O station 55
viewing settings 54, 62
Operator Panel settings 61

P
passwords 16
passwords, changing 16, 61, 71
physical specifications 10
policy configuration 37
populating the library with cartridges 48
power button 5
power connector 5
power consumption 10
power cord, connecting 28
power management 7
power socket 5
power supply 5
problem diagnosis 103
product environment 11

R
rack installation
 safety xv
rack mounting 22
rack mounting rails 22
RAID 9
random access mode 33, 47, 59
Read/Write capability 93
Ready/Activity LED 13
rear panel 5
rebooting the drive 58
rebooting the library 58
removing accessor locking screw 28
removing during installation 113
reporting library problems 101
reporting problems 101
resetting the library and drives 88

S
safety information
 laser compliance xv
 laser safety xv
SAS 28
SAS Host Interface 6, 28
SAS interface 5
saving/restoring 85
SCSI ID 9
security 32
security certificate 83
security certificate notifications 83
sending your comments iii
sequential access mode 33, 47, 59
serial attached SCSI 5
Serial Attached SCSI (SAS) 5
serial number label 2, 3
Server attachment 28
service mode 62
service procedures 111
shipping the library 57
shortcut keys 152
SNMP
 messaging 6
SNMP notifications 39, 81
SNTP server 60
sound 61
Specifications
cartridges 100
library 10
specifications, physical 10
speed matching 7
SSL 35, 46
SSL certificate 83
Stateless DHCP 61
storage capacity 10
subnet mask 35, 46, 60
superuser 71
support notification iii
Support Notification registration 51
system summary 65

T
taking online 50
taking the library online or offline 70
tape alert flags 132, 134
tape drive 56, 134
tape drive configuration 33
tape drive diagnostics 63
tape drives, downloading drive logs 88